# **Oracle® Retail Merchandising**

Security Guide

Release 16.0

E76966-03

September 2017



Oracle Retail Merchandising Security Guide, Release 16.0

E76966-03

Copyright © 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Seema Kamat, Maria Andrew

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

#### Value-Added Reseller (VAR) Language

#### **Oracle Retail VAR Applications**

The following restrictions and provisions only apply to the programs referred to in this section and licensed to you. You acknowledge that the programs may contain third party software (VAR applications) licensed to Oracle. Depending upon your product and its version number, the VAR applications may include:

- (i) the **MicroStrategy** Components developed and licensed by MicroStrategy Services Corporation (MicroStrategy) of McLean, Virginia to Oracle and imbedded in the MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Data Warehouse and MicroStrategy for Oracle Retail Planning & Optimization applications.
- (ii) the **Wavelink** component developed and licensed by Wavelink Corporation (Wavelink) of Kirkland, Washington, to Oracle and imbedded in Oracle Retail Mobile Store Inventory Management.
- (iii) the software component known as **Access Via** Micensed by Access Via of Seattle, Washington, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Signs and Oracle Retail Labels and Tags.
- (iv) the software component known as  $Adobe\ Flex^{TM}$  licensed by Adobe Systems Incorporated of San Jose, California, and imbedded in Oracle Retail Promotion Planning & Optimization application.

You acknowledge and confirm that Oracle grants you use of only the object code of the VAR Applications. Oracle will not deliver source code to the VAR Applications to you. Notwithstanding any other term or condition of the agreement and this ordering document, you shall not cause or permit alteration of any VAR Applications. For purposes of this section, "alteration" refers to all alterations, translations, upgrades, enhancements, customizations or modifications of all or any portion of the VAR Applications including all

reconfigurations, reassembly or reverse assembly, re-engineering or reverse engineering and recompilations or reverse compilations of the VAR Applications or any derivatives of the VAR Applications. You acknowledge that it shall be a breach of the agreement to utilize the relationship, and/or confidential information of the VAR Applications for purposes of competitive discovery.

The VAR Applications contain trade secrets of Oracle and Oracle's licensors and Customer shall not attempt, cause, or permit the alteration, decompilation, reverse engineering, disassembly or other reduction of the VAR Applications to a human perceivable form. Oracle reserves the right to replace, with functional equivalent software, any of the VAR Applications in future releases of the applicable program.

# **Contents**

| Send Us Your Comments  | XV      |
|--|---------|
| Preface  | xvii    |
| Audience   | xvii    |
| Documentation Accessibility  |         |
| Related Documents  |         |
| Customer Support   |         |
| Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections                           |         |
| Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network                           |         |
| Conventions  |         |
| Conventions  | , , , , |
| Part I Oracle Retail Applications  |         |
| 1 Pre-installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic                                |         |
| JDK Hardening for Use with Retail Applications   | 1-1     |
| Upgrading JDK to Use Java Cryptography Extension                                       | 1-1     |
| Disabling Weak SSL Protocols and Obsolete Ciphers in JDK7                              | 1-2     |
| Pre-installation - Steps for Secured Setup of Oracle Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic | 1-2     |
| Certificate Authority  | 1-2     |
| Obtaining an SSL Certificate and Setting up a Keystore                                 | 1-3     |
| Creating a WebLogic Domain   | 1-4     |
| Configuring the Application Server for SSL   | 1-4     |
| Configuring WebLogic Scripts if Admin Server is Secured                                | 1-8     |
| Adding Certificate to the JDK Keystore for Installer                                   | 1-8     |
| Enforcing Stronger Encryption in WebLogic  | 1-8     |
| SSL protocol version configuration   | 1-8     |
| Enabling Cipher in WebLogic SSL Configuration (For Weblogic 10.3.6 Domains)            | 1-9     |
| Securing Nodemanager with SSL Certificates   | 1-9     |
| Using Secured Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)                             | . 1-11  |
| Enabling Access to Secured Database from Forms Oracle Home - Optional                  |         |
| Webservice Security Policies   |         |
| Additional Pre-requisite for Oracle Retail Service Backbone (RSB) Security Policies    |         |
| Advanced Infrastructure Security   | 1-13    |

| 2 | Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in Database                      |       |
|---|---|-------|
|   | Configuring SSL Connections for Database Communications                     | 2-1   |
|   | Configuring SSL on the Database Server                                      | 2-1   |
|   | Configuring SSL on an Oracle Database Client                                | 2-2   |
|   | Configuring SSL on a Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) Thin Client          | 2-3   |
|   | Configuring the Password Stores for Database User Accounts                  | 2-4   |
|   | Configuring the Database Password Policies                                  | 2-4   |
|   | Configuring SSL Connection for Oracle Data Integrator (ODI)                 | 2-4   |
|   | Creating an Encrypted Tablespace in Oracle 12c Container Database           | 2-9   |
|   | Additional Information  | 2-10  |
| 3 | Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic                      |       |
|   | Retail Application Specific Post installation Steps for Security            |       |
|   | Batch Set Up for SSL Communication  |       |
|   | Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher - Disable Guest User - Optional | 3-2   |
|   | Asynchronous Task JMS Queue Security  |       |
|   | Verifying and Creating Required Async Task Job Role and User                | 3-2   |
|   | Securing the Asynchronous Task JMS Queue                                    | 3-3   |
|   | Allowing Publishing to a Secured Asynchronous Task JMS Queue                | 3-5   |
|   | Hardening Use of Headers and Transport Layer Security                       | 3-5   |
|   | Virtual Host Configuration  | 3-5   |
|   | Retail Applications web.xml Configurations                                  | 3-6   |
|   | Update weblogic.jdbc.remoteEnabled in setStartupEnv.sh                      | 3-6   |
| 4 | Installing the Merchandise Operations Management Security Applica           | tions |
|   | Installing the ReIM Application   | 4-1   |
|   | Installing the RPM Application  | 4-1   |
|   | Installing the RMS Application  | 4-1   |
|   | Installing the ReSA Application   | 4-2   |
|   | Installing the Allocation Application                                       | 4-2   |
| 5 | Troubleshooting   |       |
|   | Enabling TLS1.1 and 1.2 Protocols in Internet Explorer 11                   | 5-1   |
|   | Hardening Local JRE for Use with Retail Applications                        | 5-2   |
|   | Java Version 7/8 SSL Handshake Issue while Using Self Signed Certificates   | 5-2   |
|   | Importing the Root Certificate in Local Client JRE                          | 5-2   |
|   | Importing the Root Certificate to the Browser                               | 5-3   |
|   | Importing the Root Certificate through Internet Explorer                    | 5-3   |
|   | Importing the Root Certificate through Mozilla Firefox                      | 5-4   |
|   | Setup Secure Cookie   | 5-4   |
|   | Changes to Web Application Descriptor                                       | 5-5   |
|   | Launching Issues with RPM   |       |
|   | Disabling Hostname Verification   | 5-6   |
|   | Verifying the Certificate Content   |       |
|   | Verifying the Keystore Content  |       |
|   | Integration Issues  | E 7   |

|    | HTTPS Service Encountering Redirect Loop After Applying Policy A                                       | 5-8  |
|----|--|------|
| 6  | Importing Topology Certificate   |      |
|    | Importing Certificates into Middleware and Repository of Oracle Retail Applications                    | 6-1  |
| 7  | Using Self Signed Certificates   |      |
|    | Creating a Keystore through the Keytool in Fusion Middleware (FMW) 11g                                 | 7-1  |
|    | Exporting the Certificate from the Identity Keystore into a File                                       | 7-2  |
|    | Importing the Certificate Exported into trust.keystore   | 7-2  |
|    | Configuring WebLogic   | 7-3  |
|    | Configuring Nodemanager  |      |
|    | Importing Self Signed Root Certificate into Java Virtual Machine (JVM) Trust Store                     |      |
|    | Disabling Hostname Verification  |      |
|    | Converting PKCS7 Certificate to x.509 Certificate  | 7-3  |
| 8  | Functional Security for Applications Using Fusion Middleware   |      |
|    | Understanding the Security Model   | 8-1  |
|    | Key Security Elements  | 8-1  |
|    | Permission Grants and Inheritance  | 8-2  |
|    | Managing Authorization   | 8-4  |
|    | Accessing Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control  |      |
|    | To display the Security menu in Fusion Middleware Control  |      |
|    | Managing the Policy Store Using Fusion Middleware Control  |      |
|    | Modifying Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control  |      |
|    | To add or remove members from an application role  |      |
|    | Creating Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control   |      |
|    | To create a new application role   |      |
|    | To create an application role based on an existing one  Customizing the Default Security Configuration |      |
|    | Customizing the Policy Store   |      |
|    | Session Timeout  |      |
|    |  | 0-10 |
| 9  | ReST Services Security Consideration   | •    |
|    | One Way SSL  |      |
|    | One Way SSL - ReST Services  | 9-1  |
| Pa | rt II Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS)   |      |
| 10 | Understanding Security   |      |
|    | Security Features of the Application   | 10-1 |
|    | Database-level security  |      |
|    | Application-level security   |      |
|    | Data-level security  | 10-2 |
|    | SEC_GROUP  | 10-3 |
|    | SEC_USER_GROUP   | 10-3 |

|     | SEC_USER  | 10-3  |
|-----|---|-------|
|     | RMS Users and Data Security   | 10-4  |
|     | Encryption and Hashing  | 10-5  |
|     | Purchase Order Approval Amount  | 10-6  |
| 11  | Post Installation - Application Administration                          |       |
|     | Application Security Configuration                                      | 11-1  |
|     | Data Security Views   | 11-47 |
|     | Other Common Application Administration                                 | 11-47 |
|     | File Permissions  | 11-47 |
|     | Data Access Schema (DAS) - Overview                                     | 11-47 |
|     | Post Installation Steps for Webservice Security                         | 11-48 |
|     | Applying Policy A   | 11-48 |
|     | Enabling the HTTPS servers  | 11-48 |
|     | Creating the Webservice User  |       |
|     | Securing services   |       |
|     | Updating the Webservice deployment                                      |       |
|     | Webservice Clock Skew setting   |       |
|     | Applying Policy B   |       |
|     | Creating the Webservice user  |       |
|     | Securing services   |       |
|     | Updating the Webservice deployment                                      |       |
|     | ReSTful Services  | 11-55 |
| 12  | Extending/Customization   |       |
|     |   |       |
| Par | rt III Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA)                                 |       |
| 13  | ReSA Security Considerations  |       |
|     | Default Security Configuration  | 13-1  |
|     | Data Security   | 13-13 |
|     | Securing ReSA Tables  | 13-14 |
|     | Credit Card Information and Check Account Number Information Processing | 13-14 |
|     | ReSTful Web Services  | 13-15 |
| Par | rt IV Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM)                             |       |
| 14  | General Security Considerations   |       |
| 15  | Understanding Security  |       |
|     | Security Features Overview  | 15-1  |
|     | Dependent Applications  |       |
|     | ReIM Web Application Deployment   |       |
|     | Technical Overview of the Security Features                             |       |
|     | Security Features of the Application                                    |       |
|     | Authentication  | 15-3  |

|                | Authorization   | 15-4   |
|----------------|---|--|
|                | Audit   | 15-4   |
|                | User Management   | 15-4   |
|                | Encryption and Hashing  | 15-5   |
| 16             | Post Installation - RelM Application Administration   |  |
|                | Roles and Permissions   | 16-1   |
|                | Other Common Application Administration   | 16-16  |
| 17             | Extending/Customization   |  |
| 18             | Securing the Database   |  |
|                | Application Schema Owners   | 18-1   |
|                | Database Security Considerations  | 18-1   |
|                | Restricted Access to Purge Batches  | 18-1   |
| 19             | Data Security   |  |
|                | Location Security   | 19-1   |
|                | Reason Code Security  | 19-2   |
| Par            | t V Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM)  |  |
|                |   |  |
| 20             | General Security Considerations   |  |
| 21             | Understanding Security  |  |
|                | Security Features Overview  | 21-1   |
|                | Dependent Applications  |  |
|                | D' ' (D 1 ' II 1 I' DI (  |  |
|                | Discussion of Dependencies on Underlying Platform   | 21-2<br>21-2   |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features   | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2   |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features   | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2                                 |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication   | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3                         |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3                 |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  Audit   | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4         |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4         |
| 22             | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  Audit  User Management  | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4         |
| 22             | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  Audit  User Management  Encryption and Hashing  Post Installation - Application Administration  | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4<br>21-4 |
| 22             | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  Audit  User Management  Encryption and Hashing  | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4<br>21-4 |
|                | Technical Overview of the Security Features  Security Features of the Application  Authentication  Authorization  Audit  User Management  Encryption and Hashing  Post Installation - Application Administration  Roles and Permission Grants                                   | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4<br>21-4 |
| 22<br>23<br>24 | Technical Overview of the Security Features Security Features of the Application Authentication Authorization Audit User Management Encryption and Hashing  Post Installation - Application Administration  Roles and Permission Grants Other Common Application Administration | 21-2<br>21-2<br>21-2<br>21-3<br>21-3<br>21-4<br>21-4<br>21-4 |

|     | Database Security Considerations                     | 24-1 |
|-----|--|------|
|     | Restricted Access to Purge Batches                   | 24-2 |
| Par | rt VI Oracle Retail Allocation                       |      |
| 25  | Allocation Security Considerations                   |      |
|     | Technical Overview of the Security Features          | 25-1 |
|     | Security Features of the Application                 | 25-1 |
|     | Authentication                                       | 25-1 |
|     | Authorization  | 25-2 |
|     | Audit  | 25-2 |
|     | User Management                                      | 25-2 |
|     | Security Configuration                               | 25-3 |
|     | JMS Security   | 25-7 |
|     | Security in Allocation Reports Launching RMS Screens | 25-7 |
|     |  |      |

# **List of Examples**

| 1–1 | Adding certificate to the JDK keystore for Installer | 1-8  |
|-----|--|------|
| 1–2 | Importing all certificates into the wallet           | 1-12 |
| 1–3 | sqlnet.ora file                                      | 1-12 |
| 3–1 | Importing certificates into JDK keystore             | 3-1  |

# **List of Figures**

| 1–1   | Restarting the Admin Server                                      | . 1-4 |
|-------|--|-------|
| 1–2   | Configuring the Identity and Trust Keystores for WebLogic Server |       |
| 1–3   | Configuring SSL  |       |
| 1–4   | Values for Protocol of System Property                           |       |
| 1–5   | Securing the Nodemanager   |       |
| 2–1   | Oracle Data Integrator   |       |
| 2–2   | Connect to Repository  |       |
| 2–3   | Oracle Data Integrator Login Window                              |       |
| 2–4   | Repository Connection Information Window                         |       |
| 2–5   | Creation of ODI Agent  |       |
| 2–6   | ODI Agent Connection Information                                 |       |
| 3–1   | Administration Window  |       |
| 3–2   | Adding a new JMS Queue Scoped Roles                              |       |
| 3–3   | JMS Queue Scoped Role  |       |
| 3–4   | Adding a Group condition for RETAIL_ASYNC_TASK_JOB               |       |
| 3–5   | Policies Tab   |       |
| 3–6   | Adding a New Role  |       |
| 5–1   |  |       |
| 5–2   |  |       |
| 5–3   | Cacert Backup  |       |
| 5–4   | Importing the Root Certificate File to the Workstation           |       |
| 5–5   | Importing the Root Certificate File through Mozilla Firefox      |       |
| 8–1   | Relationships between the Default Groups and Application Roles   |       |
| 8–2   | Fusion Middlware Control Login Page                              |       |
| 8–3   | Enterprise Manager AppDomain Security Submenu                    |       |
| 8–4   | Enterprise Manager WebLogic Domain Security Submenu              |       |
| 8–5   | Retail Fusion Application's Application Roles Window             |       |
| 8–6   | Default Application Roles Window                                 |       |
| 8–7   | Edit Application Role Window                                     |       |
| 8–8   | Add Group Dialog Window  |       |
| 8–9   | Create Application Role Window                                   |       |
| 9–1   | One way SSL: ReST Services                                       |       |
| 11–1  | Enabling the HTTPS Servers                                       |       |
| 11–2  | Securing Services  |       |
| 11–3  | Add Conditions Window  |       |
| 11–4  | Attaching WS Policy to the Service                               |       |
| 11–5  | Service Endpoint Policies  |       |
| 11–6  |  | 11-52 |
| 11–7  |  | 11-53 |
| 11–8  |  | 11-53 |
| 11–9  |  | 11-54 |
| 11–10 |  | 11-54 |
| 15–1  | ReIM Physical Deployment   | 15-1  |
| 20–1  | Java Runtime Environment Settings Window                         | 20-1  |
| 21–1  | RPM Physical Deployment  | 21-1  |

# **List of Tables**

| 2–1  | Setting the Properties                            | 2-4   |
|------|---|-------|
| 6–1  | Importing Topology Certificate                    |       |
| 8–1  | Permissions Granted by the Role Hierarchy Example |       |
| 11–1 | Privileges  | 11-1  |
| 11–2 | Duties  | 11-12 |
| 11–3 | Function Security Mapping                         | 11-23 |
| 13–1 | Privileges  | 13-1  |
| 13–2 | Duties  | 13-4  |
| 13–3 | Function Security Mapping                         | 13-7  |
| 13–5 | Role to Task Mapping                              | 13-12 |
| 13–4 | Function Security Mapping (Cont.)                 | 13-12 |
| 13–6 | ReSA Tables                                       | 13-14 |
| 16–1 | Privileges  | 16-2  |
| 16–2 | Duties  | 16-4  |
| 16–3 | Function Security Mapping                         | 16-8  |
| 25-1 | Privileges  | 25-3  |
| 25-2 | Duties  | 25-4  |
| 25-3 | Function Security Mapping                         | 25-5  |

# **Send Us Your Comments**

Oracle Retail Merchandising Security Guide, Release 16.0

Oracle welcomes customers' comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document.

Your feedback is important, and helps us to best meet your needs as a user of our products. For example:

- Are the implementation steps correct and complete?
- Did you understand the context of the procedures?
- Did you find any errors in the information?
- Does the structure of the information help you with your tasks?
- Do you need different information or graphics? If so, where, and in what format?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, then please tell us your name, the name of the company who has licensed our products, the title and part number of the documentation and the chapter, section, and page number (if available).

**Note:** Before sending us your comments, you might like to check that you have the latest version of the document and if any concerns are already addressed. To do this, access the Online Documentation available on the Oracle Technology Network Web site. It contains the most current Documentation Library plus all documents revised or released recently.

Send your comments to us using the electronic mail address: retail-doc\_us@oracle.com

Please give your name, address, electronic mail address, and telephone number (optional).

If you need assistance with Oracle software, then please contact your support representative or Oracle Support Services.

If you require training or instruction in using Oracle software, then please contact your Oracle local office and inquire about our Oracle University offerings. A list of Oracle offices is available on our Web site at http://www.oracle.com.

# **Preface**

This guide serves as a guide for administrators, developers, and system integrators who securely administer, customize, and integrate Oracle Retail Merchandising Operations Management (MOM) Suite applications. Installation and configuration for each product are covered in more detail in the each product's Installation Guide.

#### **Audience**

This document is intended for administrators, developers, and system integrators who perform the following functions:

- Document specific security features and configuration details for the Oracle Retail MOM Suite products, in order to facilitate and support the secure operation of the Oracle Retail product and any external compliance standards.
- Guide administrators, developers, and system integrators on secure product implementation, integration, and administration. Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)

It is assumed that the readers have general knowledge of administering the underlying technologies and the application.

# **Documentation Accessibility**

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at

http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

#### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit

http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

#### **Related Documents**

For more information, see the following documents:

- Oracle Retail Merchandising Data Conversion Operations Guide
- Oracle Retail Merchandising Batch Schedule
- Oracle Retail Merchandising Implementation Guide

- Oracle Retail POS Suite 14.1/Merchandising Operations Management 15.0 Implementation Guide
- Oracle Retail Xstore Suite Merchandising Implementation Guide
- Oracle Retail Allocation documentation
- Oracle Retail Invoice Matching documentation
- Oracle Retail Merchandising System documentation
- Oracle Retail Trade Management documentation
- Oracle Retail Sales Audit documentation
- Oracle Retail Price Management documentation
- Oracle Retail Active Retail Intelligence documentation

# **Customer Support**

To contact Oracle Customer Support, access My Oracle Support at the following URL:

https://support.oracle.com

When contacting Customer Support, please provide the following:

- Product version and program/module name
- Functional and technical description of the problem (include business impact)
- Detailed step-by-step instructions to re-create
- Exact error message received
- Screen shots of each step you take

# Improved Process for Oracle Retail Documentation Corrections

To more quickly address critical corrections to Oracle Retail documentation content, Oracle Retail documentation may be republished whenever a critical correction is needed. For critical corrections, the republication of an Oracle Retail document may at times not be attached to a numbered software release; instead, the Oracle Retail document will simply be replaced on the Oracle Technology Network Web site, or, in the case of Data Models, to the applicable My Oracle Support Documentation container where they reside.

This process will prevent delays in making critical corrections available to customers. For the customer, it means that before you begin installation, you must verify that you have the most recent version of the Oracle Retail documentation set. Oracle Retail documentation is available on the Oracle Technology Network at the following URL:

 $\verb|http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/documentation/oracle-retail-100266.html|$ 

An updated version of the applicable Oracle Retail document is indicated by Oracle part number, as well as print date (month and year). An updated version uses the same part number, with a higher-numbered suffix. For example, part number E123456-02 is an updated version of a document with part number E123456-01.

If a more recent version of a document is available, that version supersedes all previous versions.

# Oracle Retail Documentation on the Oracle Technology Network

Oracle Retail product documentation is available on the following Web site:

http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/oracle-retail-100266.htm

(Data Model documents are not available through Oracle Technology Network. You can obtain them through My Oracle Support.)

# **Conventions**

The following text conventions are used in this document:

| Convention | Meaning  |
|------------|--|
| boldface   | Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.         |
| italic     | Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.                          |
| monospace  | Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter. |

# Part I

# **Oracle Retail Applications**

The following chapters provide guidance for administrators, developers, and system integrators who securely administer, customize, and integrate the Oracle Retail Applications.

Part I contains the following chapters:

- Pre-installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic
- Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in Database
- Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic
- Installing the Merchandise Operations Management Security Applications
- Troubleshooting
- Importing Topology Certificate
- Using Self Signed Certificates
- Functional Security for Applications Using Fusion Middleware
- ReST Services Security Consideration

# Pre-installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic

Oracle Retail applications are primarily deployed in Oracle WebLogic server as Middleware tier. Java and forms based applications rely upon Middleware infrastructure for complete security apart from application specific security features.

This chapter describes the pre-installation steps for secured setup of Oracle Retail infrastructure in WebLogic.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- JDK Hardening for Use with Retail Applications
- Pre-installation Steps for Secured Setup of Oracle Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic
- Certificate Authority
- Obtaining an SSL Certificate and Setting up a Keystore
- Creating a WebLogic Domain
- Configuring the Application Server for SSL
- Enforcing Stronger Encryption in WebLogic
- Securing Nodemanager with SSL Certificates
- Using Secured Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)
- Enabling Access to Secured Database from Forms Oracle Home Optional

# JDK Hardening for Use with Retail Applications

See the following sections on JDK hardening for use with Retail applications:

- Upgrading JDK to use Java Cryptography extension
- Disabling weak SSL protocols and obsolete ciphers in JDK

# **Upgrading JDK to Use Java Cryptography Extension**

You need to install the unlimited encryption Java Cryptography Extension (JCE) policy, if you want to use the strongest Cipher suites (256 bit\_encryption). It is dependent on the Java Development Kit (JDK) version.

Using the following URL, download and install the JCE Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files that correspond to the version of your JDK:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html

For JDK 7, download from the following URL:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce-7-download-432 124. html and replace the files in JDK/jre/lib/security directory

For JDK8, download the files from URL:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2133 166.html

#### Disabling Weak SSL Protocols and Obsolete Ciphers in JDK7

**Note:** This section is applicable only for applications using Java 7.

Edit the following lines in JDK:/jre/lib/security/java.security file jdk.certpath.disabledAlgorithms=MD2, RC4, RSA keySize < 1024 and

jdk.tls.disabledAlgorithms=SSLv3, SSLV2Hello, MD5withRSA, DH keySize < 768

**Note:** Restart the entire WebLogic instance using the JDK to enable changes to take effect once the JCE has been installed.

# Pre-installation - Steps for Secured Setup of Oracle Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic

Secured Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol allows client-server applications to communicate across a network in a secured channel. Client and server should both decide to use SSL to communicate secured information like user credentials or any other secured information.

WebLogic Server supports SSL on a dedicated listen port. Oracle Forms are configured to use SSL as well. To establish an SSL connection, a Web browser connects to WebLogic Server by supplying the SSL port and the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTPs) protocol in the connection URL.

For example: https://myserver:7002

Retail Merchandising System (RMS) setup is supported in WebLogic in secured mode. For enterprise deployment, it is recommended to use SSL certificates signed by certificate authorities.

**Note:** You need to obtain a separate signed SSL certificates for each host where application is being deployed.

The Security Guide focuses on securing Oracle Retail Applications in single node setup and not on applications deployed on clusters.

# Certificate Authority

Certificate Authority or Certification Authority (CA) is an organization which provides digital certificates to entities and acts as trusted third party. Certificates issued by the commercial CAs are automatically trusted by most of the web browsers, devices, and applications. It is recommended to have certificates obtained from a trusted CA or commercial CAs to ensure better security.

#### Obtaining an SSL Certificate and Setting up a Keystore

**Note:** SSL certificates are used to contain public keys. With each public key there is an associated private key. It is critically important to protect access to the private key. Otherwise, the SSL messages may be decrypted by anyone intercepting the communications.

Perform the following steps to obtain an SSL certificate and setting up a keystore:

- 1. Obtain an identity (private key and digital certificates) and trust (certificates of trusted certificate authorities) for WebLogic Server.
- 2. Use the digital certificates, private keys, and trusted CA certificates provided by the WebLogic Server kit, the CertGen utility, Sun Microsystem's keytool utility, or a reputed vendor such as Entrust or Verisign to perform the following steps:
  - Set appropriate JAVA\_HOME and PATH to java, as shown in the following example:

```
export JAVA_HOME=/u00/webadmin/product/jdk
export PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH
```

**2.** Create a new keystore.

keytool -genkey -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -keystore <keystore> -alias <alias>

For example:

```
keytool -genkey -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -keystore hostname.keystore
-alias hostname
```

**3.** Generate the signing request.

keytool -certreq -keyalg RSA -file <certificate request file> -keystore <keystore> -alias <alias>

For example:

```
keytool -certreq -keyalg RSA -file hostname.csr -keystore hostname.keystore
-alias hostname
```

- **4.** Submit the certificate request to CA.
- **3.** Store the identity and trust.

Private keys and trusted CA certificates which specify identity and trust are stored in a keystore.

In the following examples the same keystore to store all certificates are used:

1. Import the root certificate into the keystore as shown in the following example:

```
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias verisignclass3g3ca -file Primary.pem
-keystore hostname.keystore
```

A root certificate is either an unsigned public key certificate or a self-signed certificate that identifies the Root CA.

2. Import the intermediary certificate (if required) into the keystore as shown in the following example:

- keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias oracleclass3g3ca -file Secondary.pem -keystore hostname.keystore
- **3.** Import the received signed certificate for this request into the keystore as shown in the following example:

keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias hostname -file cert.cer -keystore hostname.keystore

#### Creating a WebLogic Domain

WebLogic domain is created for Oracle Retail Applications as part of the installation. Different domains are created in different hosts for different applications in situations where applications are being managed by different users or deployed on different hosts. Once the domains are created, you need to enable the SSL ports if not done already.

Perform the following steps to enable the SSL:

- Log in to WebLogic console using Administrator user. For example, weblogic.
- Navigate to <Domain> > Environment > Servers > < Servername> > Configuration > General tab.
- 3. Click Lock & Edit.
- Select **SSL Listen Port Enabled** and assign the port number.
- **5.** Click **Save** and **Activate Changes**.
- **6.** Restart SSL to enable the changes.

Figure 1–1 Restarting the Admin Server



# Configuring the Application Server for SSL

Perform the following steps to configure the Application Server for SSL:

- Configure the identity and trust keystores for WebLogic Server in the WebLogic Server Administration Console.
  - 1. In the Change Center of the Administration Console, click **Lock & Edit**.
  - **2.** In the left pane of the Console, expand **Environment** and select **Servers**.
  - 3. Click the name of the server for which you want to configure the identity and trust keystores as shown in the following example:

WLS\_FORMS is for Forms server

- **4.** Select **Configuration**, then select **Keystores**.
- 5. In the **Keystores** field, select the method for storing and managing private keys/digital certificate pairs and trusted CA certificates.

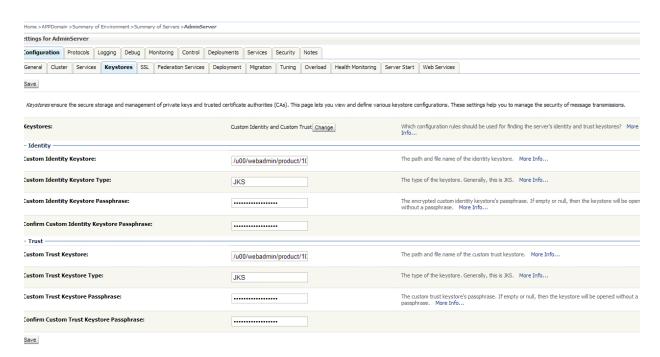
The following options are available:

- **Demo Identity and Demo Trust** The demonstration identity and trust keystores, located in the BEA\_HOME\server\lib directory and the Java Development Kit (JDK) cacerts keystore, are configured by default. You need to use for development purpose only.
- Custom Identity and Java Standard Trust A keystore you create and the trusted CAs defined in the cacerts file in the JAVA\_HOME\jre\lib\security directory.
- Custom Identity and Custom Trust [Recommended] An Identity and trust keystores you create.
- Custom Identity and Command Line Trust: An identity keystore you create and command-line arguments that specify the location of the trust keystore.
- **6.** Select **Custom Identity** and **Custom Trust**.
- 7. In the **Identity** section, define the following attributes for the identity keystore:
  - **Custom Identity Keystore** This is the fully qualified path to the identity keystore.
  - Custom Identity Keystore Type This is the type of the keystore. Generally, this attribute is Java KeyStore (JKS); if it is left blank, it defaults to JKS.
  - Custom Identity Keystore Passphrase This is the password you must enter when reading or writing to the keystore. This attribute is optional or required depending on the type of keystore. All keystores require the passphrase in order to write to the keystore. However, some keystores do not require the passphrase to read from the keystore. WebLogic Server only reads from the keystore so whether or not you define this property depends on the requirements of the keystore.
- **8.** In the **Trust** section, define properties for the trust keystore.
  - If you choose Java Standard Trust as your keystore, specify the password defined when creating the keystore.
- **9.** Confirm the password.
  - If you choose **Custom Trust** [**Recommended**] define the following attributes:
  - **Custom Trust Keystore** This is the fully qualified path to the trust keystore.
  - Custom Trust Keystore Type This is the type of the keystore. Generally, this attribute is JKS; if it is left blank, it defaults to JKS.
  - Custom Trust Keystore Passphrase This is the password that you need to enter when reading or writing to the keystore. This attribute is optional or required depending on the type of keystore. All keystores require the passphrase in order to write to the keystore. However, some keystores do not require the passphrase to read from the keystore. WebLogic Server only reads from the keystore, so whether or not you define this property depends on the requirements of the keystore.
- **10.** Click **Save**.
- **11.** To activate these changes, in the Change Center of the Administration Console, click **Activate Changes**.

**Note:** Not all changes take effect immediately, some require a restart.

Figure 1–2 shows how to configure the Application Server for SSL.

Figure 1-2 Configuring the Identity and Trust Keystores for WebLogic Server



For more information on configuring Keystores, see the Administration Console Online Help.

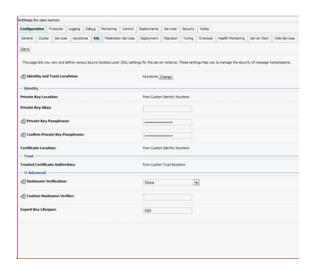
- **2.** Set SSL configuration options for the private key alias and password in the WebLogic Server Administration Console.
  - 1. In the Change Center of the Administration Console, click Lock & Edit.
  - In the left pane of the Console, expand **Environment** and select **Servers**.
  - 3. Click the name of the server for which you want to configure the identity and trust keystores.
  - **4.** Select **Configuration**, then select **SSL**.
  - **5.** In the **Identity and Trust Locations**, the **Keystore** is displayed by default.
  - **6.** In the **Private Key Alias**, type the string alias that is used to store and retrieve the server's private key.
  - 7. In the **Private Key Passphrase**, provide the keystore attribute that defines the passphrase used to retrieve the server's private key.
  - **8.** Save the changes.
  - **9.** Click **Advanced** section of SSL tab.
  - **10.** In the **Hostname Verification**, select **None**.

This specifies to ignore the installed implementation of the WebLogic.security.SSL.HostnameVerifier interface (this interface is generally used when this server is acting as a client to another application server).

For Weblogic Server 10.3.6 and former versions, enable Java Secure Socket Extension by enabling **Use JSSE SSL** to provide high security.

#### **11.** Save the changes.

Figure 1-3 Configuring SSL



For more information on configuring SSL, see the section *Configure SSL* in the Administration Console Online Help.

All the server SSL attributes are dynamic; when modified through the Console. They cause the corresponding SSL server or channel SSL server to restart and use the new settings for new connections. Old connections will continue to run with the old configuration. You must reboot WebLogic Server to ensure that all the SSL connections exist according to the specified configuration.

Use the **Restart SSL** button on the **Control**: Start/Stop page to restart the SSL server when changes are made to the keystore files. You have to apply the same for subsequent connections without rebooting WebLogic Server.

Upon restart you can see the following similar entries in the log:

<Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <WebLogicServer> <BEA-000365> <Server</pre> state changed to RESUMING> <Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <Server> <BEA-002613> <Channel</pre> "DefaultSecure" is now ing on 10.141.15.214:57002 for protocols iiops, t3s, ldaps, https.>

<Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <Server> <BEA-002613> <Channel</pre> "DefaultSecure[1]" is now ing on 127.0.0.1:57002 for protocols iiops, t3s, ldaps, https.>

<Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <WebLogicServer> <BEA-000329> <Started</pre> WebLogic Admin Server "AdminServer" for domain "APPDomain" running in Production Mode>

<Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <WebLogicServer> <BEA-000365> <Server</pre> state changed to RUNNING>

<Mar 11, 2013 5:18:27 AM CDT> <Notice> <WebLogicServer> <BEA-000360> <Server</pre> started in RUNNING mode>

**Note:** For complete security of the WebLogic Server, it is recommended to secure both Administration as well the Managed Server where application is being deployed. You can choose to disable the non-SSL ports (HTTP). It is recommended to secure the Node Manager.

The steps to secure Node Manager is provided in the following section.

#### Configuring WebLogic Scripts if Admin Server is Secured

Perform the following steps to configure the WebLogic scripts if Admin Server is secured:

- Update the WebLogic startup/shutdown scripts with secured port and protocol to start/stop services.
- **2.** Backup and update the following files in <DOMAIN\_HOME>/bin with correct Admin server urls:

echo "\$1 managedserver1 http://apphost1:7001" startManagedWebLogic.sh:

stopManagedWebLogic.sh: echo "ADMIN\_URL defaults to t3://apphost1:7001 if not set as an environment variable or the second command-line parameter."

stopManagedWebLogic.sh: echo "\$1 managedserver1 t3://apphost1:7001 WebLogic

stopManagedWebLogic.sh: ADMIN\_URL="t3://apphost1:7001"

stopWebLogic.sh: ADMIN\_URL="t3://apphost1:7001"

**3.** Change the URLs as follows:

t3s://apphost1:7002

https://apphost1:7002

#### Adding Certificate to the JDK Keystore for Installer

You will need the Oracle Retail Application installer to run Java. In situations where Administration Server is secured using signed certificate, the Java keystore through which the installer is launched must have the certificate installed.

In case the installer is being run using JDK deployed at location /u00/webadmin/product/jdk, follow the steps as shown in Example 1–1.

#### Example 1–1 Adding certificate to the JDK keystore for Installer

```
apphost1:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias
apphost1 -file /u00/webadmin/ssl/apphost1.cer -keystore
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security/cacerts
Enter keystore password:
Certificate was added to keystore
apphost1:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl>
```

# Enforcing Stronger Encryption in WebLogic

It is recommended to use a stronger encryption protocol in your production environment.

See the following sections to enable the latest SSL and cipher suites.

#### SSL protocol version configuration

In a production environment, Oracle recommends Transport Layer Security (TLS) Version 1.1, or higher for sending and receiving messages in an SSL connection.

To control the minimum versions of SSL Version 3.0 and TLS Version 1 that are enabled for SSL connections, do the following:

Set the WebLogic.security.SSL.minimumProtocolVersion=protocol system property as an option in the command line that starts WebLogic Server.

This system property accepts one of the following values for protocol:

Figure 1–4 Values for Protocol of System Property

| Value   | Description  |
|---------|--|
| SSLv3   | Specifies SSL V3.0 as the minimum protocol version enabled in SSL connections.                                     |
| TLSv1   | Specifies TLS V1.0 as the minimum protocol version enabled in SSL connections.                                     |
| TLSvx.y | Specifies TLS $\forall x.y$ as the minimum protocol version enabled in SSL connections, where                      |
|         | <ul> <li>x is an integer between 1 and 9, inclusive</li> <li>y is an integer between 0 and 9, inclusive</li> </ul> |
|         | For example, TLSv1.2.  |

Set the following property in startup parameters in WebLogic Managed server for enabling the higher protocol:

DWebLogic.security.SSL.minimumProtocolVersion=TLSv1.2 -Dhttps.protocols=TLSv1.2

**Note:** In case protocol is set for Managed servers, the same should be set for Administration server. Ensure that all the managed servers are down when making changes to the Administration server for setting up the protocol. It is recommended to set the properties in Administration server and then the Managed server.

#### Enabling Cipher in WebLogic SSL Configuration (For Weblogic 10.3.6 Domains)

Configure the <ciphersuite> element in the <ssl> element in the <DOMAIN\_ HOME>\server\config\config.xml file in order to enable the specific Cipher Suite to use as follows:

**Note:** You need to ensure that the tag <ciphersuite> is added immediately after tab <enabled>.

```
<ss1>
<name>examplesServer</name>
<enabled>true</enabled>
<ciphersuite>TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA</ciphersuite>
<-port>17002</-port>
</ssl>
```

**Note:** The above can be done using wlst script.

For more information, go to http://docs.oracle.com/cd/E24329\_ 01/web.1211/e24422/ssl.htm#BABDAJJG. It is advisable to bring down the managed server prior to making the changes.

# Securing Nodemanager with SSL Certificates

Perform the following steps for securing the Nodemanager with SSL certificates:

- 1. Navigate to **<BEA\_HOME>/wlserver\_10.3/common/nodemanager** (In case of weblogic 12c domain, the location is <DOMAIN\_HOME>/nodemanager) and take a backup of nodemanager.properties.
- **2.** Add the following similar entries to nodemanager.properties:

**KeyStores**=CustomIdentityAndCustomTrust

CustomIdentityKeyStoreFileName=/u00/webadmin/ssl/hostname.keystore

CustomIdentityKeyStorePassPhrase=[password to keystore, this will get encrypted]

CustomIdentityAlias=hostname

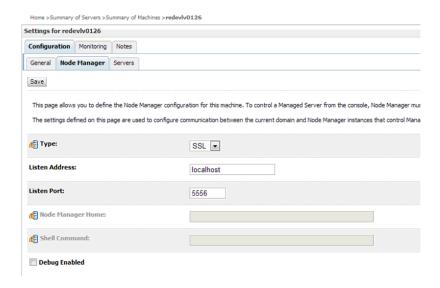
**CustomIdentityPrivateKeyPassPhrase**=[password to keystore, this will get encrypted]

**CustomTrustKeyStoreFileName**=/u00/webadmin/ssl/hostname.keystore

SecureListener=true

- 3. In case of weblogic 10.3.6 and former version servers enabled with JSSE, then Nodemanager start up script (startNodeManager.sh) should be added as the following parameter:
  - -Dweblogic.security.SSL.enableJSSE=true
- **4.** Log in to **WebLogic console**, navigate to **Environment**, and then **Machines**.
- **5.** Select the nodemanager created already and navigate to **Node Manager** tab.
- In the Change Center, click **Lock & Edit**.
- In the **Type** field, select **SSL** from the list.
- Click **Save** and **Activate**.

Figure 1-5 Securing the Nodemanager



- 9. You need to bounce the entire WebLogic Domain for changes to take effect, after activating the changes.
- **10.** You need to verify if the nodemanager is reachable in **Monitoring** tab after restart.

#### Using Secured Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)

The Application can communicate with LDAP server on a secured port. It is recommended to use the secured LDAP server to protect user names and passwords from being sent in clear text on the network.

For information on Configuring Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), see the Oracle Fusion Middleware Administration Guide.

It is important to import the certificates used in LDAP server into the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) of the WebLogic server for SSL handshake, in case the secure LDAP is used for authentication.

#### For example:

- Set JAVA\_HOME and PATH to the JDK being used by WebLogic Domain.
- Backup the JAVA\_HOME/jre/lib/security/cacerts /u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> cp -rp cacerts cacerts\_ORIG
- Import the Root and Intermediary (if required) certificates into the java keystore. /u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias verisignclass3g3ca -file ~/ssl/Primary.pem -keystore cacerts
  - /u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias oracleclass3g3ca -file ~/ssl/Secondary.pem -keystore cacerts
- Import the User certificate from LDAP server into the java keystore.
  - /u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias hostname -file ~/ssl/cert.cer -keystore cacerts

**Note:** The default password of JDK keystore is **changeit**.

The deployed application should be able to communicate with LDAP on SSL port after successful SSL Handshake.

# Enabling Access to Secured Database from Forms Oracle Home - Optional

You need to perform the following additional setup to connect to Oracle database on secured port (TCPs) from Forms Oracle Home:

1. Create wallet using orapki.

**Note:** A wallet is created using either orapki or mkstore utility. Forms installation provides orapki utility to create the wallet and is used for creation of wallet.

- \$ mkdir /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X\_FORMS/WLS/Oracle\_FRHome1/network/wallet \$ cd /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X\_FORMS/WLS/Oracle\_FRHome1/network/wallet
- export JAVA\_HOME=/u00/webadmin/product/jdk
- export PATH=\$JAVA\_HOME/bin:\$PATH
- export ORACLE\_HOME=/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X\_FORMS/WLS/Oracle\_FRHome1
- export PATH=\$ORACLE\_HOME/bin:\$PATH

```
$ export PATH=/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_FORMS/WLS/oracle_common/bin:$PATH
$ orapki wallet create -wallet
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_FORMS/WLS/Oracle_FRHome1/network/wallet/secured
-auto_login -pwd <wallet-pwd>
Oracle PKI Tool: Version 11.1.1.5.0
Copyright (c) 2004, 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
$ 1s
cwallet.sso ewallet.p12
```

**2.** Import the Signed certificates into the wallet.

#### Example 1–2 Importing all certificates into the wallet

```
$ orapki wallet jks_to_pkcs12 -wallet
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X FORMS/WLS/Oracle FRHome1/network/wallet/secured -pwd
<wallet-pwd> -kevstore
/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_APPS/WLS/wlserver_10.3/server/lib/apphost1.keystore
-jkspwd <keystore-pwd>
Oracle PKI Tool: Version 11.1.1.5.0
Copyright (c) 2004, 2011, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.
    For information on Oracle Wallet Manager and orapki, see Fusion Middleware
    Administrator's Guide.
```

**3.** Provide the wallet details in sqlnet.ora file.

**Note:** You need to create a sqlnet.ora file with details of the wallet in \$ORACLE\_HOME/network/admin directory, if the file is not available.

#### Example 1-3 sqlnet.ora file

```
SQLNET.AUTHENTICATION_SERVICES=(TCPS,NTS)
SSL CLIENT AUTHENTICATION = TRUE
WALLET_LOCATION =
   (SOURCE =
     (METHOD = FILE)
     (METHOD_DATA = (DIRECTORY = /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_FORMS/WLS/Oracle_
FRHome1/network/wallet/secured))
```

#### **4.** Connect using sqlplus.

```
$ export ORACLE_HOME=/u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_FORMS/WLS/Oracle_FRHome1
$ export PATH=$ORACLE_HOME/bin:$PATH
$ sqlplus rms01app@<DB_NAME>_secure
SQL*Plus: Release 12.1.0.1.0 Production on Tue Aug 5 02:15:22 2014
Copyright (c) 1982, 2013, Oracle. All rights reserved.
Connected to:
Oracle Database 12c Enterprise Edition Release 12.1.0.1.0 - 64bit Production
With the Partitioning, OLAP, Data Mining and Real Application Testing options
SQL>
```

### Webservice Security Policies

You need to configure the user credentials and other security related information at the service consumer and the app service provider layers, in order to provide end to end security between Web service consumer and provider.

The security policies certified by Oracle Retail are as follows:

1. Username Token over HTTPS - This security configuration is referred as Policy A in this document. This policy provides confidentiality due to the use of SSL, however it does not provide non-repudiation as nothing is signed.

Wssp1.2-2007-Https-UsernameToken-Plain.xml

- Message Protection This security configuration is referred as Policy B in this document. This policy encrypts the messages itself, so SSL is not used. The sender also signs the messages, which provides non-repudiation of the messages. However, this policy is more complex to implement.
  - Wssp1.2-2007-Wss1.1-UsernameToken-Plain-EncryptedKey-Basic128
  - Wssp1.2-2007-EncryptBody
  - Wssp1.2-2007-SignBody

#### Note:

- The web services are secured using WebLogic policies (as opposed to OWSM policies).
- If the application services are secured with any policy other than what is mentioned in this document or custom policies, the instructions in the document will not work.
- The security setup in the document does not address authorization. Authorization must be taken care by the individual application hosting
- Policy B is not supported over HTTPS. So ensure that non SSL ports are enabled prior to applying Policy B.

#### Additional Pre-requisite for Oracle Retail Service Backbone (RSB) Security Policies

Perform the additional pre-requisites for Oracle Retail Service Backbone (RSB) security policies:

- Create DB schema for OSB [PolicyA][PolicyB].
- 2. Ensure that <RSB\_MDS> schema is created while running Repository Creation Utility (RCU) at <rcuHome>/bin/rcu.
- **3.** Extend RSB Domain with OWSM Extention [PolicyA][PolicyB].
- Ensure that OSB OWSM Extension-11.1.1.6 is selected, when RSBDomain is being created.

# **Advanced Infrastructure Security**

Depending upon your security need for your production environment, infrastructure where Oracle Retail applications are deployed can be secured.

Ensure the following to secure complete protection of environment:

- Securing the WebLogic Server Host
- Securing Network Connections
- Securing your Database
- Securing the WebLogic Security Service
- Securing Applications

For more information on Ensuring the Security of Your Production Environment, see Securing a Production Environment for Oracle WebLogic Server 12 C Release 1 (10.3.6) Guide.

## Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in **Database**

Oracle Retail applications use the Oracle database as the backend data store for applications. In order to ensure complete environment security the database should be secured.

This chapter describes the post installation steps for secured setup of Retail infrastructure in the Database.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Configuring SSL Connections for Database Communications
- Configuring the Password Stores for Database User Accounts
- Configuring the Database Password Policies
- Configuring SSL Connection for Oracle Data Integrator (ODI)
- Creating an Encrypted Tablespace in Oracle 12c Container Database
- Additional Information

#### Configuring SSL Connections for Database Communications

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is the standard protocol for secure communications, providing mechanisms for data integrity and encryption. This can protect the messages sent and received by the database to applications or other clients, supporting secure authentication and messaging. Configuring SSL for databases requires configuration on both the server and clients, which include application servers.

This section covers the steps for securing Oracle Retail Application Clusters (RAC) database. Similar steps can be followed for single node installations also.

### Configuring SSL on the Database Server

The following steps are one way to configure SSL communications on the database server:

- Obtain an identity (private key and digital certificate) and trust (certificates of trusted certificate authorities) for the database server from a Certificate Authority.
- **2.** Create a folder containing the wallet for storing the certificate information. For Real Application Cluster (RAC) systems, this directory can be shared by all nodes in the cluster for easier maintenance.

mkdir-p/oracle/secure\_wallet

**3.** Create a wallet in the path. For example,

orapki wallet create -wallet /oracle/secure\_wallet -auto\_login

4. Import each trust chain certificate into the wallet as shown in the following example:

```
orapki wallet add -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -trusted_cert -cert <trust
chain certificate>
```

**5.** Import the user certificate into the wallet, as shown in the following example:

```
orapki wallet add -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -user_cert -cert <certificate
```

6. Update the listener ora by adding a TCPS protocol end-point first in the list of end points

```
LISTENER1=
  (DESCRIPTION=
     (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcps)(HOST=<dbserver>)(PORT=2484))
     (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp)(HOST=<dbserver>)(PORT=1521)))
```

7. Update the listener.ora by adding the wallet location and disabling SSL authentication.

```
WALLET_LOCATION =
(SOURCE=
 (METHOD=File)
 (METHOD_DATA=
  (DIRECTORY=wallet_location)))
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE
```

8. Update the sqlnet.ora with the same wallet location information and disabling SSL authentication.

```
WALLET_LOCATION =
(SOURCE=
 (METHOD=File)
 (METHOD_DATA=
  (DIRECTORY=wallet_location)))
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE
```

**9.** Update the tnsnames.ora to configure a database alias using TCPS protocol for connections.

```
<dbname>_secure=
  (DESCRIPTION=
   (ADDRESS_LIST=
    (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCPS)(HOST=<dbserver>)(PORT=2484)))
   (CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=<dbname>)))
```

- **10.** Restart the database listener to pick up listener.ora changes.
- 11. Verify the connections are successful to the new <dbname>\_secure alias
- **12.** At this point either the new secure alias can be used to connect to the database, or the regular alias can be modified to use TCPS protocol.
- **13.** Export the identity certificate so that it can be imported on the client systems

```
orapki wallet export -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -dn <full dn of identity
certificate> -cert <filename_to_create>
```

#### Configuring SSL on an Oracle Database Client

The following steps are one way to configure SSL communications on the database client:

Create a folder containing the wallet for storing the certificate information.

```
mkdir-p /oracle/secure_wallet
```

**2.** Create a wallet in the path. For example,

```
orapki wallet create -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -auto_login
```

3. Import each trust chain certificate into the wallet as shown in the following example:

```
orapki wallet add -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -trusted_cert -cert <trust
chain certificate
```

**4.** Import the identity certificate into the wallet, as shown in the following example:

```
orapki wallet add -wallet /oracle/secure_wallet -trusted_cert -cert
<certificate file location>
```

**Note:** On the client the identity certificate is imported as a trusted certificate, whereas on the server it is imported as a user certificate.

5. Update the sqlnet.ora with the wallet location information and disabling SSL authentication.

```
WALLET_LOCATION =
(SOURCE=
  (METHOD=File)
  (METHOD_DATA=
  (DIRECTORY=wallet_location)))
SSL_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION=FALSE
```

6. Update the tnsnames.ora to configure a database alias using TCPS protocol for connections.

```
<dbname>_secure=
(DESCRIPTION=
   (ADDRESS LIST=
   (ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCPS)(HOST=<dbserver>)(PORT=2484)))
   (CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=<dbname>)))
```

- **7.** Verify the connections are successful to the new <dbname>\_secure alias.
- At this point either the new secure alias can be used to connect to the database, or the regular alias can be modified to use TCPS protocol.

#### Configuring SSL on a Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) Thin Client

The following steps are one way to configure SSL communications for a Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) thin client:

1. Create a folder containing the keystore with the certificate information.

```
mkdir-p /oracle/secure jdbc
```

**2.** Create a keystore in the path. For example,

```
keytool -genkey -alias jdbcwallet -keyalg RSA -keystore /oracle/secure_
jdbc/truststore.jks -keysize 2048
```

**3.** Import the database certificate into the trust store as shown in the following example:

```
keytool -import -alias db_cert -keystore /oracle/secure_jdbc/truststore.jks
-file <db certificate file>
```

**4.** JDBC clients can use the following URL format for JDBC connections:

```
jdbc:oracle:thin:@(DESCRIPTION= (ADDRESS= (PROTOCOL=tcps) (HOST=<dbserver>)
(PORT=2484)) (CONNECT DATA= (SERVICE NAME=<dbname>)))
```

**Note:** The <dbname> would be replaced with service name in case of multitenant database (12c).

5. You need to set the properties as shown in Table 2–1, either as system properties or as JDBC connection properties.

Table 2–1 Setting the Properties

| Property                             | Value  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| javax.net.ssl.trustStore             | Path and file name of trust store. For example, /oracle/secure_jdbc/truststore.jks |
| javax.net.ssl.trustStoreType         | JKS  |
| javax.net.ssl.trustStorePass<br>word | Password for trust store   |

## **Configuring the Password Stores for Database User Accounts**

Wallets can be used to protect sensitive information, including usernames and passwords for database connections. The Oracle Database client libraries have built-in support for retrieving credential information when connecting to databases. Oracle Retail applications utilize this functionality for non-interactive jobs such as batch programs so that they are able to connect to the database without exposing user and password information to other users on the same system.

For information on configuring wallets for database access, see the Appendix Setting Up Password Stores with Oracle Wallet in the product installation guide.

### **Configuring the Database Password Policies**

Oracle Database includes robust functionality to enforce policies related to passwords such as minimum length, complexity, when it expires, number of invalid attempts, and so on. Oracle Retail recommends these policies are used to strengthen passwords and lock out accounts after failed attempts.

For example, to modify the default user profile to lock accounts after five failed login attempts, run the following commands as a database administrator:

- Query the current settings of the default profile select resource\_name,limit,resource\_type from dba\_profiles where profile='DEFAULT';
- Alter the profile, if failed\_login\_attempts is set to unlimited: alter profile default limit FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS 5;

**Note:** Many other profile settings are available for increased security. For more information, see the Oracle Database Security Guide.

#### Configuring SSL Connection for Oracle Data Integrator (ODI)

This section covers the steps for securing Oracle data Integrator (ODI) and communication over HTTPS Protocol.

See the following steps to configure SSL communications for ODI:

1. Set the environment variable for JAVA\_HOME as follows: \$ export JAVA\_HOME=/oracle/oracle\_linux/jdk1.7 64bit \$ export PATH=\$JAVA\_HOME/bin:\$PATH

**2.** Create a Self Signed Keystore. Run the command to generate the keystore as shown in the following example:

```
$ keytool -genkey -keyalg RSA -alias selfsigned -keystore keystore.jks
-storepass password -validity 360 -keysize 2048
What is your first and last name?
  [Unknown]: <Hostname>
What is the name of your organizational unit?
  [Unknown]: <Organization Unit>
What is the name of your organization?
 [Unknown]: <SomeORG>
What is the name of your City or Locality?
 [Unknown]: <IN>
What is the name of your State or Province?
  [Unknown]: <MSP>
What is the two-letter country code for this unit?
 [Unknown]: <US>
Is CN= <Hostname>, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<SomeORG>, L=<IN>, ST=<MSP>,
C=<US> correct?
 [no]: yes
Enter key password for <selfsigned>
       (RETURN if same as keystore password):
Re-enter new password:
```

**3.** Export the certificate from the keystore created above into the file, server.cer:

```
keytool -export -alias selfsigned -storepass password -file server.cer
-keystore keystore.jks
```

For example:

```
$ keytool -export -alias selfsigned -storepass password -file server.cer
-keystore keystore.jks
Certificate stored in file <server.cer>
```

**4.** Create the trust-store file, cacerts.jks, and add the server certificate to the trust-store. For example,

```
$ keytool -import -v -trustcacerts -alias selfsigned -file server.cer -keystore
cacerts.jks -keypass password -storepass password
For Example -
$ keytool -import -v -trustcacerts -alias selfsigned -file server.cer -keystore
cacerts.jks -keypass password -storepass password
Owner: CN=<Hostname>, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<SomeORG>, L=<IN>, ST=<MSP>,
C=<US>
Issuer: CN=<Hostname>, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<SomeORG>, L=<IN>, ST=<MSP>,
C=<US>
Serial number: 1f5717fd
Valid from: Fri Aug 01 02:12:50 CDT 2014 until: Mon Jul 27 02:12:50 CDT 2015
Certificate fingerprints:
         MD5: 6E:67:FE:FA:4F:6C:E7:E8:C5:5F:17:97:18:E6:62:7E
         SHA1: 48:B7:66:58:24:C9:BD:A9:F9:E1:FB:08:70:94:35:9A:B0:44:DF:D6
         SHA256:
6A:88:40:E1:A7:2F:67:13:6A:F7:12:D0:F1:47:6C:D7:E8:68:45:73:C3:04:36:24:8A:41:1
8:3D:22:8A:DD:5F
         Signature algorithm name: SHA256withRSA
         Version: 3
Extensions:
#1: ObjectId: 2.5.29.14 Criticality=false
SubjectKeyIdentifier [
KeyIdentifier [
0000: 2E A6 E1 80 12 33 70 4C 72 FA DF ED 98 BB 33 DF .....3pLr....3.
0010: 81 6B 40 A4
                                                         .k@.
]
]
```

```
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore
[Storing cacerts.jks]
```

**5.** Encode the password used by Keystore and Truststore as follows:

```
$ cd $ODI_HOME/oracledi/agent/bin
$ ./encode.sh <password>
For Example -
$ ./encode.sh password
       fDyp8qdXcuuYUbBcg0Jr
```

**6.** After configuring repository connection information of the odiparams.sh file, configure and modify the following sections of the file and save it:

```
$ vi odiparams.sh
```

**7.** Modify the following entries:

```
ODI_KEYSTORE_ENCODED_PASS=fDyp8qdXcuuYUbBcq0Jr
ODI_KEY_ENCODED_PASS=fDyp8qdXcuuYUbBcg0Jr
ODI_TRUST_STORE_ENCODED_PASS=fDyp8qdXcuuYUbBcg0Jr
ODI_JAVA_OPTIONS="-Djava.security.policy=server.policy
-Doracle.security.jps.config=./jps-config.xml
-Djavax.net.ssl.keyStore=<KEYSTORE_LOCATION>/keystore.jks
JAVA_OPTION"
```

**Note:** The encoded password is the one that you generated by running./encode.sh script.

8. Add the following lines to odi.conf before SetJavaHome Environment Variable in the file and save. This will set up ODI Studio for HTTPS.

```
$cd $ODI_HOME/oracledi/agent/bin
Append the odi.conf file with below entries:-
AddVMOption -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=<KEYSTORE_LOCATION>/cacerts.jks
AddVMOption -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=password
For example
$ vi odi.conf
#Keystore Details
{\tt AddVMOption}
-Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore=/u03/odi/product/11.1.1.7/SSL/cacerts.jks
AddVMOption -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=password
```

**Note:** The password is the actual password used while encoding. This is not the encoded password.

- **9.** Configure ODI STUDIO with New Agent.
- **10.** Go to the following location:

```
$ cd $ODI_HOME/oracledi/client
```

**11.** Run the following:

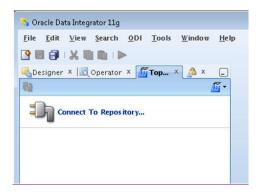
```
$ ./odi.sh
Oracle Data Integrator 11g
Copyright (c) 1997, 2012, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved
```

Figure 2–1 Oracle Data Integrator



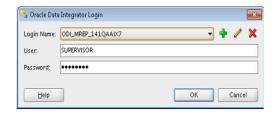
**12.** The Connect to Repository Window appears:

Figure 2–2 Connect to Repository



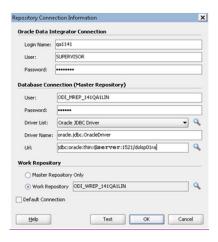
**13.** Once Connect to Repository Window appears, click **Connect to Repository**. The Oracle Data Integrator Login screen appears.

Figure 2–3 Oracle Data Integrator Login Window



**14.** Click **4** symbol and provide the Repository Connection Information.

Figure 2-4 Repository Connection Information Window

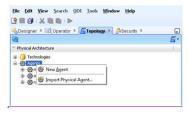


**Note:** The URL in Figure 2–4 is an example for Pluggable Database. If it is a non-container database, specify the following URL:

jdbc:oracle:thin:@server:1521/<dbname>

**15.** Configure the New Agent by right clicking Agents and select New Agent.

Figure 2-5 Creation of ODI Agent



**16.** Specify all the details and make sure you are using an HTTPS protocol.

Figure 2–6 ODI Agent Connection Information



17. Finally start the ODI Agent to listen on HTTPS port:

```
$ $ODI_HOME/oracledi/agent/bin> ./agent.sh "-PROTOCOL=HTTPS" "-PORT=20911"
"-NAME=oracledi1"
Enter password for TrustStore:
2014-08-01 03:18:45.854 NOTIFICATION ODI-1128 Agent oracledi1 is starting.
Container: STANDALONE. Agent Version: 11.1.1.7.0 - 02/03/2013. Port: 20911. JMX
Port: 21911.
2014-08-01 03:18:51.209 NOTIFICATION ODI-1111 Agent oracledi1 started. Agent
```

```
version: 11.1.1.7.0 - 02/03/2013. Port: 20911. JMX Port: 21911.
2014-08-01 03:18:51.210 NOTIFICATION ODI-1136 Starting Schedulers on Agent
oracledi1.
2014-08-01 03:18:52.040 NOTIFICATION ODI-1137 Scheduler started for work
repository ODI_WREP_141QA1LIN on Agent oracledi1
```

### Creating an Encrypted Tablespace in Oracle 12c Container Database

The retail tablespaces can be encrypted in container databases using the following method:

- Update the SQLNET.ORA file with the following encryption details:
  - **a.** Configure the sqlnet.ora File for a Software Keystore Location.

```
ENCRYPTION_WALLET_LOCATION=
(SOURCE=
(METHOD=FILE)
 (METHOD_DATA=
 (DIRECTORY=path_to_keystore)))
```

- **b.** Restart the listener.
- **2.** Set up the Tablespace Encryption in the Container Database.
  - **a.** Create Software Keystores as follows:

SQL> ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT CREATE KEYSTORE 

Keystore altered.

**b.** Create an Auto-Login Software Keystore as follows:

SQL> ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT CREATE AUTO\_LOGIN KEYSTORE FROM KEYSTORE

'/u03/wallet\_cdb' identified by "val1ue#'; Keystore altered.

**Note:** The auto-login software keystore can be opened from different computers from the computer where this keystore resides. However, the [local] auto-login software keystore can only be opened from the computer on which it was created.

**c.** Open the Software Keystore as follows:

SQL> ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT SET KEYSTORE OPEN IDENTIFIED BY "val1ue#" Container=ALL;

Keystore altered.

**d.** Set the Software TDE Master Encryption Key as follows:

SQL> ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT SET KEY IDENTIFIED BY "val1ue#" WITH BACKUP USING 'TDE\_ENCRYPTION' Container=all; Keystore altered.

**Note:** One can set the Encryption KEY only for particular PDB if required, by specifying the CONTAINER=<PDB>.

Create the ENCRYPTED TABLESPACE in PDB as follows:

SQL> conn sys/D0ccafe1@QOLRP01APP as sysdba Connected.

SQL> create tablespace test datafile '+DATA1' size 100m ENCRYPTION DEFAULT STORAGE (ENCRYPT);

Tablespace created.

Verify the Encryption:

SQL> select \* from v\$encryption\_wallet

| WRL_<br>TYPE | WRL_<br>PARAMET<br>ER | STATUS | WALLET_<br>TYPE | WALLET<br>OR | FULLY<br>BAC | CON ID |   |
|--------------|-----------------------|--------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------|---|
| FILE         | /u03/walle<br>t_cdb   | OPEN   | PASSWOR<br>D    | SINGLE       | NO           | 0      | _ |

3. For more information on Configuring Transparent Data Encryption (TDE), see

http://docs.oracle.com/database/121/ASOAG/asotrans\_config.htm#ASOAG9529

- **4.** Other useful information may be useful during maintenance activity.
  - **a.** Close the Encryption Wallet as follows:

SQL> ADMINISTER KEY MANAGEMENT SET KEYSTORE Close IDENTIFIED BY "val1ue#" Container=ALL;

#### **Additional Information**

For more information on the subjects covered in this section as well as information on other options that are available to strengthen database security, see the Oracle Database *Security Guide 12c Release 1.* 

The Oracle Advanced Security Option provides industry standards-based solutions to solve enterprise computing security problems, including data encryption and strong authentication. Some of the capabilities discussed in this guide require licensing the Advanced Security Option.

For more information, see the Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide 12c Release 1.

# Post Installation of Retail Infrastructure in WebLogic

This chapter describes the post installation steps for secured setup of Oracle Retail infrastructure in WebLogic.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Retail Application Specific Post installation Steps for Security
- Batch Set Up for SSL Communication
- Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher Disable Guest User Optional
- Asynchronous Task JMS Queue Security
- Hardening Use of Headers and Transport Layer Security
- Update weblogic.jdbc.remoteEnabled in setStartupEnv.sh

### Retail Application Specific Post installation Steps for Security

See the following sections for steps to improve security after an Oracle Retail Application has been installed.

#### **Batch Set Up for SSL Communication**

Java batch programs communicate with Java applications deployed in WebLogic. For example, Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM) and Oracle Store Inventory Management (SIM). The communication needs to have SSL handshake with the deployed application. You need to import the SSL Certificates into the JAVA\_ HOME/jdk/jre/lib/security/cacerts keystore for successful running of the application batches.

#### Example 3–1 Importing certificates into JDK keystore

```
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> cp -rp cacerts cacerts_ORIG
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias
verisignclass3g3ca -file ~/ssl/Primary.pem -keystore cacerts
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias
oracleclass3g3ca -file ~/ssl/Secondary.pem -keystore cacerts
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias
hostname -file ~/ssl/cert.cer -keystore cacerts
```

**Note:** The default password of JDK keystore is **changeit**.

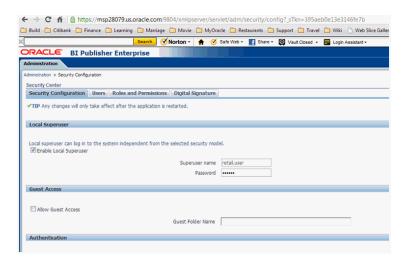
#### Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) Publisher - Disable Guest User - Optional

The guest account in Oracle Business Intelligence (BI) publisher is used for public facing reports that anyone can see. Disabling this account forces all users to supply their credentials before accessing any information. Disabling guest user enhances security of BI Publisher. However, application which requires guest user will have reporting feature which may cease to function after making this change. For example, RMS reports.

Perform the following steps to disable the guest user:

- 1. Log in to BI Publisher with user having Administrator privileges.
- Navigate to Administration > Security Configuration.
- Deselect Allow Guest Access.

Figure 3-1 Administration Window



Save and restart the BI Publisher instance.

### Asynchronous Task JMS Queue Security

This section describes the steps for adding security to the asynchronous task JMS queue. Securing the queue will allow only recognized users of the Retail Application to publish tasks to the JMS queue.

#### Verifying and Creating Required Async Task Job Role and User

Securing the JMS async task queue requires a special enterprise role and a special user to exist in the retailer's Oracle Internet Directory (OID) instance.

The RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB is an enterprise role that will be used to group users who will have access to the asynchronous task queue.

The RETAIL \_ASYNC\_TASK\_USER is a special user Retail Applications can use as a principal for executing their message-driven-bean-based consumer processes. This user is a member of the RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB.

The RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB and RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_USER are included as part of the Retail Default Security Reference Implementation installed as part of the Retail Application.

Verify the existence of the job and user in the OID instance. You need to create them if they do not exist.

#### Securing the Asynchronous Task JMS Queue

Securing the queue can be done through the Weblogic Administration Console by adding a JMS Queue Scoped role.

- Log into the WebLogic Administration Console.
- Navigate to the JMS Module where the asynchronous task queue belongs to and go to the module's Security tab.
- **3.** Under the Roles section, add a new JMS Queue Scoped Roles.

Figure 3–2 Adding a new JMS Queue Scoped Roles



Specify a name for the JMS Queue Scoped Role. The suggested naming convention is [AppCode]AsyncJMSQueueAccessRole]. For example, AllocAsyncJMSQueueAccessRole. The JMS Queue Scoped Role will be created.

Figure 3-3 JMS Queue Scoped Role



- Navigate back to the JMS Module's Security tab.
- 6. Click the JMS Queue Scoped role that was created and add a Group condition for RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB.

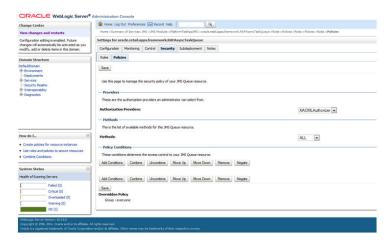
○RACL€ WebLogic Server® Administration Console Change Center View changes and restarts Configuration editing is enabled. Future changes will automatically be activated as you modify, add or delete items in this domain. JMS Queue Role Conditions Domain Structure Use this page to edit the conditions of a security role that can be used only in the policy for this JMS queue. This is the name of the JMS Queue role. MyAppAsyncJMSQueueAccessRole These conditions determine membership in the 3MS Queue role. Add Conditions Combine Uncombine Move Up Move Down Remove Negate Group: RETAIL\_ASYNC\_CONSUMER\_JOB Add Conditions | Combine | Uncombine | Move Up | Move Down | Remove | Negate How do I... ⊟ Save Create scoped security roles Delete security roles

Figure 3-4 Adding a Group condition for RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB

- **7.** Navigate back to the JMS Module's Security tab.
- Go to the Policies section.

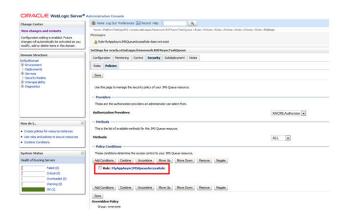
Figure 3-5 Policies Tab

 Use roles and policies to secure resources Combine Conditions System Status



Add a new Role based condition specifying the JMS Queue Role created in the previous step.

Figure 3–6 Adding a New Role



- **10.** Save the changes. The queue is now secured.
- 11. Proceed to the next section to allow the Retail Web Application to publish tasks to the queue.

#### Allowing Publishing to a Secured Asynchronous Task JMS Queue

Once the Asynchronous Task Queue has been secured with a JMS Queue Scoped Role as described in the previous section, further configuration is required to allow users of the Retail web application to publish tasks to the queue.

The JMS Queue Scoped Role was created to include an enterprise role, RETAIL\_ ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB. Any users belonging to this enterprise role will be given access to publish tasks to the queue.

Instead of assigning users directly to the RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB, it is recommended that applications should identify specific enterprise job roles in their system whose users will be allowed to perform asynchronous processing. Those job roles should be configured to extend from the RETAIL\_ASYNC\_TASK\_JOB group.

See the Oracle Internet Directory documentation for details on how to extend one group to another.

### Hardening Use of Headers and Transport Layer Security

This section describes the steps for adding security headers in Web server layer and transport security settings in the Retail Applications web.xml file.

### Virtual Host Configuration

Navigate to Web server configuration file and add the following header configurations by restarting Web server:

```
# Header Settings to make sure no-store is active
<IfModule mod headers.c>
   Header set Cache-Control "private, no-cache, no-store, proxy-revalidate,
no-transform"
   Header set Pragma "no-cache"
</IfModule>
# Guarantee HTTPS for 1 Year including Sub Domains
Header always set Strict-Transport-Security "max-age=31536000; includeSubDomains"
```

The X-Frame-Options header is appended automatically by the ADF framework. This header setting specifies whether content can be viewed via a third-party X-Frame. To protect against cross-site scripting, the ADF framework sets this value to SAMEORIGIN, which indicates that only websites within the same domain may frame

#### Retail Applications web.xml Configurations

- **1.** Extract the respective Retail applications.
- 2. Navigate to web.xml file in WEB-INF directory of the application war file.
- **3.** Add the following contents:

```
<security-constraint>
<web-resource-collection>
<web-resource-name>All</web-resource-name>
<url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
</web-resource-collection>
<user-data-constraint>
<description>USE SSL</description>
<transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL/transport-guarantee>
</user-data-constraint>
</security-constraint>
```

### Update weblogic.jdbc.remoteEnabled in setStartupEnv.sh

Ensure to update weblogic.jdbc.remoteEnabled in setStartupEnv.sh to false and rebounce the domain and node manager.

# **Installing the Merchandise Operations Management Security Applications**

This chapter indicates the additional steps to be followed in conjunction with Oracle Retail Applications standard installation document. For more information on installing the Oracle Retail Applications, see the Installation Guides listed in the subsequent sections for complete steps to be followed.

This chapter covers the following topics of each Merchandise Operations Management (MOM) Applications:

- Installing the ReIM Application
- Installing the RPM Application
- Installing the RMS Application
- Installing the ReSA Application
- Installing the Allocation Application

**Note:** If MOM applications are installed in secure environment, then set the following parameter before installing the applications:

export \_JAVA\_ OPTIONS="-Dweblogic.security.SSL.minimumProtocolVersion=TLSv

### Installing the RelM Application

For information on steps related to the installation of ReIM in secured environment, see Chapter 14 and Oracle Retail Invoice Matching Installation Guide.

#### Installing the RPM Application

For information on steps related to the installation of RPM in secured environment, see Chapter 20 and Oracle Retail Price Management Installation Guide.

### Installing the RMS Application

For information on steps related to the installation of RMS in secured environment, see Chapter 11 and Oracle Retail Merchandising System Installation Guide.

## **Installing the ReSA Application**

For information on steps related to the installation of ReSA in secured environment, see Chapter 13 and Oracle Retail Sales Audit Installation Guide.

## **Installing the Allocation Application**

For information on steps related to the installation of Allocation in secured environment, see Chapter 25 and Oracle Retail Allocation Installation Guide.

# **Troubleshooting**

This chapter covers the common errors, issues, and troubleshooting them.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

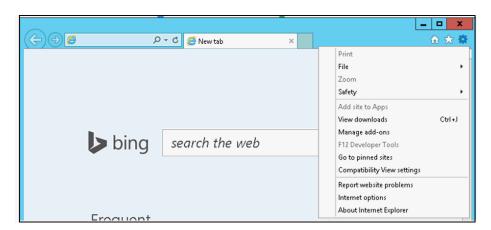
- Enabling TLS1.1 and 1.2 Protocols in Internet Explorer 11
- Hardening Local JRE for Use with Retail Applications
- Java Version 7/8 SSL Handshake Issue while Using Self Signed Certificates
- Setup Secure Cookie
- Changes to Web Application Descriptor
- Launching Issues with RPM
- Disabling Hostname Verification
- Verifying the Certificate Content
- **Integration Issues**
- HTTPS Service Encountering Redirect Loop After Applying Policy A

### Enabling TLS1.1 and 1.2 Protocols in Internet Explorer 11

To enable TLS 1.1 and 1.2 Internet explorer, do the following:

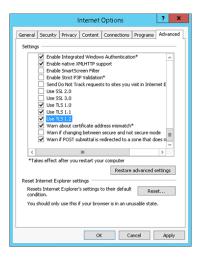
1. Click **Tools** (Alt+X) and the Internet Options.

Figure 5-1



2. Under Advanced>Settings, scroll down and select TLS 1.0, 1.1 and 1.2. Disable SSL 2.0 and SSL 3.0 as follows:

Figure 5-2



**3.** Click **Apply**.

### Hardening Local JRE for Use with Retail Applications

This section is required to launch RMS, RPM and SIM applications. The configuration is required for both 32bit JRE(Default Location: C:\Program Files (x86)\Java\jre) and 64 bit JRE(Default Location: C:\Program Files\Java\jre8), referred as JRE in reminder of this section.

1. Download and install the JCE Unlimited Strength Jurisdiction Policy Files that correspond to the version of your JDK:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html

For JDK 8, download from the following URL:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/jce8-download-2 133166.html and replace the files in JDK/jre/lib/security directory

### Java Version 7/8 SSL Handshake Issue while Using Self Signed **Certificates**

Java Version 7/8 may have issues using self signed certificates. The self-signed root certificate may not be recognized by Java Version 1.7/1.8 and a certificate validation exception might be thrown during the SSL handshake. You need to create the private key with Subject Key Identifier to fix this problem. You need to include an option addext\_ski when the orapki utility is used to create the private key in the root wallet.

#### Importing the Root Certificate in Local Client JRE

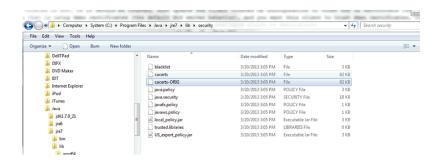
If customers are using certificates other than provided by standard certificate authorities like custom CA implementation, then the JRE used for launching the applications from local machines like laptops or desktops might display a different error messages.

The most probable cause of this issue could be unavailability of root certificates of the CA within the local JRE being used.

Perform the following steps to import the root certificates:

Backup cacert at <JRE\_HOME>/lib/security/cacert.

Figure 5–3 Cacert Backup



2. Import the certificate using keytool utility as shown in the following example:

```
C:\Program Files\Java\jre8\lib\security>..\..\bin\keytool.exe -import
-trustcacerts -file D:\ADMINISTRATION\SSL\apphost2\Selfsigned\apphost2.root.cer
-alias apphost2 -keystore "C:\Program Files\Java\jre7\lib\security\cacerts"
Enter keystore password: [default is changeit]
Owner: CN=apphost2, OU=<department>, O=<company>,L=<city>,ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>",
Issuer: CN=apphost2, OU=<department>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>"
Serial number: 515d4bfb
Valid from: Thu Apr 04 15:16:35 IST 2013 until: Fri Apr 04 15:16:35 IST 2014
Certificate fingerprints:
MD5: AB:FA:18:2B:BC:FF:1B:67:E7:69:07:2B:DB:E4:C6:D9
SHA1: 2E:98:D4:4B:E0:E7:B6:73:55:4E:5A:BE:C1:9F:EA:9B:71:18:60:BB
SHA256: F3:54:FB:67:80:10:BA:9C:3F:AB:48:0B:27:83:58:BB:3D:22:C5:27:7D:
F4:D1:85:C4:4E:87:57:72:2B:6F:27
Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
Version: 3
Trust this certificate? [no]: (yes)
Certificate was added to keystore
C:\Program Files\Java\jre8\lib\security>
```

#### Importing the Root Certificate to the Browser

You need to add the signed Weblogic server certificate in the browser to avoid certificate verification error, if the Root Certificate is not in that list of trusted CAs.

#### Importing the Root Certificate through Internet Explorer

Perform the following steps to import the Root Certificate through Internet Explorer:

- **1.** Copy the Root Certificate file to the workstation.
- Rename the file to fa root cert.cer (this is a quick and easy way to associate the file with the Windows certificate import utility).

Figure 5–4 Importing the Root Certificate File to the Workstation



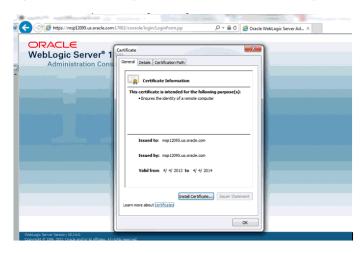
- **3.** Select the file.
- 4. Click Install Certificate and click Next.
- **5.** Select **Place all certificates in the following store** and click **Browse**.
- 6. Select trusted Root Certification Authorities and click OK.
- 7. Click Next.
- **8.** Click **Finish** and then **Yes** at the Security Warning prompt.
- **9.** Click **OK** to close the remaining open dialog boxes.

#### Importing the Root Certificate through Mozilla Firefox

Perform the following steps to import the Root Certificate through Mozilla Firefox:

- 1. Start Mozilla Firefox.
- **2.** Select **Tools** > **Options** from the main menu.
- **3.** Click **Advanced** >**Encryption** tab >**View Certificates**.
- In Certificate Manager, click the **Authorities** tab and then the **Import** button.
- In the Downloading Certificate dialog, choose Trust this CA to identify websites and click **OK**.
- Click **OK** in Certificate Manager.
- **7.** Open a browser and test the URL using the SSL port.

Figure 5–5 Importing the Root Certificate File through Mozilla Firefox



### **Setup Secure Cookie**

To obtain secure cookies, do the following:

- **1.** Enable SSL in the environment.
- **2.** Update the weblogic.xml.

```
<session-descriptor>
<cookie-http-only>false/cookie-http-only>
<cookie-secure>true</cookie-secure>
<url-rewriting-enabled>false</url-rewriting-enabled>
<cookie-path>/<context_root></cookie-path>
</session-descriptor>
```

- **3.** Redeploy the <app>.ear file.
- Restart the services.

### **Changes to Web Application Descriptor**

Following are the changes to be made to Web Application Descriptor:

- Open the deployment descriptor of the Service Workspace, which has the jersey servlet configured.
- Change transport-guarantee to CONFIDENTIAL.
- Deploy the Application to secure the ReST Services as a one way SSL as follows:

```
<security-constraint>
   <web-resource-collection>
     <web-resource-name>Workflow Actions</web-resource-name>
  <url-pattern>/services/private/*</url-pattern>
      <http-method>GET</http-method>
      <http-method>POST</http-method>
   </web-resource-collection>
<auth-constraint>
</auth-constraint>
<user-data-constraint>
     <transport-guarantee>CONFIDENTIAL</transport-guarantee>
</user-data-constraint>
 </security-constraint>
```

**Note:** An SSL connection needs to be used to ensure information being sent is not compromised, especially authentication credentials. If SSL is not used, the user credentials gets passed with BASE-64 encoding which does not encrypt the credentials and would be a hole in security.

#### Launching Issues with RPM

For launching errors of RPM in the Java console, see the following example:

```
Caused by: java.net.ConnectException: t3s://apphost2:17012: Destination
unreachable; nested exception is:
javax.net.ssl.SSLKeyException: [Security:090542]Certificate chain received from
apphost2 - 10.141.13.195 was not trusted causing SSL handshake failure. Check the
certificate chain to determine if it should be trusted or not. If it should be
trusted, then update the client trusted CA configuration to trust the CA
certificate that signed the peer certificate chain. If you are connecting to a WLS
server that is using demo certificates (the default WLS server behavior), and you
want this client to trust demo certificates, then specify
-Dweblogic.security.TrustKeyStore=DemoTrust on the command line for this client.;
```

```
No available router to destination
at weblogic.rjvm.RJVMFinder.findOrCreateInternal(RJVMFinder.java:216)
at weblogic.rjvm.RJVMFinder.findOrCreate(RJVMFinder.java:170)
at weblogic.rjvm.ServerURL.findOrCreateRJVM(ServerURL.java:153)
weblogic.jndi.WLInitialContextFactoryDelegate.getInitialContext(WLInitialContextFa
ctoryDelegate.java:352)
... 27 more
```

The reason could be SSL Handshake failing between Desktop client and the RPM server. Try importing the root certificates in local client JRE (see the steps as provided in Importing the Root Certificate in Local Client JRE section). In case this fails, try disabling hostname verification to NONE for SSL Configuration of the managed server where RPM is deployed. See Disabling Hostname Verification section. This will require restart of the RPM managed server.

### **Disabling Hostname Verification**

The hostname verification ensures that the hostname in the URL to which the client connects matches the hostname in the digital certificate that the server sends back as part of the SSL connection. However, in case SSL handshake is failing due to inability to verify hostname this workaround can be used.

**Note:** Disabling hostname verification is not recommended on production environments. This is only recommended for testing purposes. Hostname verification helps to prevent man-in-the-middle attacks.

Perform the following steps to disable the hostname verification for testing purposes:

- 1. Go to Environment > Domain > Servers > AdminServer.
- **2.** Click the **SSL** tab.
- 3. Click Advanced.
- **4.** On Hostname Verification, select **NONE**.
- **5.** Save and activate changes.
- **6.** On the Node Manager startup script, look for JAVA. Add the following line:

Dweblogic.nodemanager.sslHostNameVerificationEnabled=false

After this change, the script should look as follows:

```
JAVA_OPTIONS="-Dweblogic.nodemanager.sslHostNameVerificationEnabled=false
${JAVA_OPTIONS}"
cd "${NODEMGR_HOME}"
set -x
if [ "$LISTEN_PORT" != "" ]
  if [ "$LISTEN_ADDRESS" != "" ]
```

**7.** Restart Node manager.

### Verifying the Certificate Content

In situations where the certificate expires or belongs to a different hosts, the certificates become unusable. You can use the keytool utility to determine the details of the

certificate. The certificates should be renewed or new certificates should be obtained from the appropriate certificate authorities, if the certificates expire.

#### Example:

```
apphost1:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -printcert -file cert.cer
Certificate[1]:
Owner: CN=apphost1, OU=<department>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or province>,
C=<country>"
Issuer: CN=Oracle SSL CA, OU=Class 3 MPKI Secure Server CA, OU=VeriSign Trust
Network, O=Oracle Corporation, C=US
Serial number: 0078dab9f1a5b56e2cd6g92a3987296
Valid from: Thu Oct 11 20:00:00 EDT 2012 until: Sat Oct 12 19:59:59 EDT 2013
Certificate fingerprints:
        MD5: 2B:71:89:11:01:40:43:FC:6F:D7:FB:24:EB:11:A5:1C
         SHA1:
DA:EF:EC:1F:85:A9:DA:0E:E1:1B:50:A6:8B:A8:8A:BA:62:69:35:C1
         SHA256:
C6:6F:6B:A7:C5:2C:9C:3C:40:E3:40:9A:67:18:B9:DC:8A:97:52:DB:FD:AB:4B:E5:B2:56:47:E
C:A7:16:DF:B6
         Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
        Version: 3
Extensions:
```

### Verifying the Keystore Content

Keystores are repository of the certificates. If you face issues related to SSL Certificates, you need to check the certificates which are available in the keystore. You need to import the certificates if they are not missing. The keytool command provides the list of the certificates available.

#### Example:

```
$ keytool -v -list -keystore /u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security/cacerts
$ keytool -v -list -keystore /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.X_APPS/WLS/wlserver_
10.3/server/lib/apphost1.keystore
```

#### **Integration Issues**

Oracle Retail applications can be deployed across different hosts and behind network firewalls. Ensure firewalls are configured to allow TCPS connections to enable secure communications among integrated application.

Secured applications using signed certificates need to use same secured protocols for communication. Ensure that all the communicating applications use the same protocol.

For more information on steps to specify secured protocol, see Enforcing Stronger Encryption in WebLogic section.

Communicating applications using signed certificates may need to verify the incoming connections. Root certificates should be available in the keystores of the applications to verify the requests from different host. It is important to import all the root certificates in the keystores of all communicating applications. For information on steps to import the root certificate in local client JRE, see Importing the Root Certificate in Local Client IRE section.

### HTTPS Service Encountering Redirect Loop After Applying Policy A

The proxy server access enters into a redirect loop, if the services are secured with policy A (username token over SSL), and the deployment is in a cluster. The access to such services does not work.

Perform the following workaround through SB Console, for services that are secured with HTTPS:

- **1.** Click **Resource Browser**.
- Click Proxy Services under Resource Browser.
- **3.** Click **Create under Change Center** to start a session.
- **4.** For each of the SSL secured proxy services, perform the following steps:
  - 1. Click the proxy service you want to change.
  - 2. Click Edit next to HTTP Transport Configuration.
  - **3.** Uncheck **HTTPS Required** check box.
  - 4. Click Last.
  - 5. Click Save.
- 5. Click Activate and then Submit.

# **Importing Topology Certificate**

Implementation of SSL into the Oracle Retail deployment is driven by mapping the SSL certificates and wallets to various participating components in the topology.

### Importing Certificates into Middleware and Repository of Oracle Retail **Applications**

Table 6–1 describes the trust stores to be updated while confirming the certificates imported into middleware and repository of Oracle Retail applications. Ensure you have updated the given trust stores with the signed (either self signed or issued by certifying authority) certificates

> **Note:** In Table 6–1, the \*root.cer are the public key certificates and the \*server.cer are the private key certificates.

Table 6-1 Importing Topology Certificate

|                         |                        | Java app-host                  | ost                         |                                     |                              | RIB app-host                     | ıst                        | BIPublisher-host                   | ost                               | OID-h  |             |                         |
|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------|-------------|-------------------------|
|                         |                        |                                |                             | Forms app-host                      | -host                        |                                  |                            |                                    |                                   | ost    | Client-host | +                       |
| Component               | Component Certificates | Java app<br>-Managed<br>server | Java<br>app-JAVA<br>cacerts | Forms<br>app -<br>Managed<br>server | Forms<br>app-JAVA<br>cacerts | RIB<br>app-Man<br>aged<br>server | RIB<br>app-JAVA<br>cacerts | BIPublisher<br>- Managed<br>server | BIPublishe<br>r - JAVA<br>cacerts | Wallet | Browser     | Client-JA<br>VA cacerts |
| Java.app                | appserver.cer          | Yes                            | No                          | No                                  | No                           | No                               | No                         | No                                 | No                                | No     | No          | No                      |
| Java.app                | approot.cer            | Yes                            | Yes                         | No                                  | No                           | No                               | Yes                        | No                                 | Yes                               | Yes    | Yes         | Yes                     |
| Forms.app               | fmserver.cer.          | No                             | No                          | Yes                                 | No                           | No                               | No                         | No                                 | No                                | No     | No          | No                      |
| Forms.app               | fmroot.cer             | No                             | No                          | No                                  | Yes                          | No                               | No                         | No                                 | Yes                               | Yes    | Yes         | Yes                     |
| RIB.app                 | ribserver.cer          | No                             | No                          | No                                  | No                           | Yes                              | No                         | No                                 | No                                | No     | No          | No                      |
| RIB.app                 | ribroot.cer            | No                             | Yes                         | No                                  | No                           | Yes                              | Yes                        | No                                 | No                                | No     | Yes         | Yes                     |
| BI Publisher            | biserver.cer           | No                             | No                          | No                                  | No                           | No                               | No                         | Yes                                | No                                | No     | No          | No                      |
| BI Publisher biroot.cer | biroot.cer             | No                             | Yes                         | No                                  | Yes                          | No                               | No                         | Yes                                | Yes                               | No     | Yes         | Yes                     |
| OID                     | oidcer.cer             | No                             | No                          | No                                  | No                           | No                               | No                         | No                                 | No                                | Yes    | No          | No                      |
| OID                     | oidroot.cer            | No                             | Yes                         | No                                  | No                           | No                               | No                         | No                                 | Yes                               | Yes    | Yes         | Yes                     |

# **Using Self Signed Certificates**

Self signed certificates can be used for development environment for securing applications. The generic steps to be followed for creating self signed certificates and configuring for use for Oracle Retail application deployment are covered in the subsequent sections.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Creating a Keystore through the Keytool in Fusion Middleware (FMW) 11g
- Exporting the Certificate from the Identity Keystore into a File
- Importing the Certificate Exported into trust.keystore
- Configuring WebLogic
- Configuring Nodemanager
- Importing Self Signed Root Certificate into Java Virtual Machine (JVM) Trust Store
- Disabling Hostname Verification
- Converting PKCS7 Certificate to x.509 Certificate

### Creating a Keystore through the Keytool in Fusion Middleware (FMW) 11g

Perform the following steps to create a keystore through the keytool in Fusion Middleware (FMW) 11g:

**1.** Create a directory for storing the keystores.

\$ mkdir ssl

**2.** Run the following to set the environment:

\$ cd \$MIDDLEWARE\_HOME/user\_projects/domains/<domain>/bin

\$../setDomainEnv.sh

#### Example:

```
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.6/WLS/user_
projects/domains/APPDomain/bin> . ./setDomainEnv.sh
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/product/10.3.6/WLS/user_
projects/domains/APPDomain>
```

**3.** Create a keystore and private key, by executing the following command:

```
keytool -genkey -alias <alias> -keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -dname <dn> -keypass
<password> -keystore <keystore> -storepass <password> -validity 365
Example:
```

apphost2:[10.3.6\_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -genkey -alias apphost2

```
-keyalg RSA -keysize 2048 -dname "CN=<Server Name>,OU=<Organization Unit>,
O=<Organization>, L=<City>, ST=<State>, C=<Country>" -keypass <kpass> -keystore
/u00/webadmin/ssl/apphost2.keystore -storepass <spass> -validity 365
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> ls -ltra
drwxr-xr-x 18 webadmin dba 4096 Apr 4 05:31 ..
-rw-r--r- 1 webadmin dba 2261 Apr 4 05:46 apphost2.keystore
drwxr-xr-x 2 webadmin dba 4096 Apr 4 05:46 .
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl>
```

### **Exporting the Certificate from the Identity Keystore into a File**

Perform the following steps to export the certificate from the identity keystore into a file (for example, pubkey.cer):

**1.** Run the following command:

\$ keytool -export -alias selfsignedcert -file pubkey.cer -keystore identity.jks -storepass <password>

#### Example:

```
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -export -alias apphost2 -file
/u00/webadmin/ssl/pubkey.cer -keystore /u00/webadmin/ssl/apphost2.keystore
-storepass <spass>
Certificate stored in file </u00/webadmin/ssl/ropubkey.cerot.cer>
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> ls -1
-rw-r--r- 1 webadmin dba 2261 Apr 4 05:46 apphost2.keystore
-rw-r--r-- 1 webadmin dba 906 Apr 4 06:40 pubkey.cer
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl>
```

### Importing the Certificate Exported into trust.keystore

Perform the following steps to import the certificate you exported into trust.keystore:

**1.** Run the following command:

\$ keytool -import -alias selfsignedcert -trustcacerts -file pubkey.cer -keystore trust.keystore -storepass <password>

#### Example:

```
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -import -alias apphost2
-trustcacerts -file pubkey.cer -keystore trust.keystore -storepass <spass>
Owner: CN=apphost2, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>
Issuer: CN=apphost2, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>
Serial number: 515d4bfb
Valid from: Thu Apr 04 05:46:35 EDT 2013 until: Fri Apr 04 05:46:35 EDT 2014
Certificate fingerprints:
        MD5: AB:FA:18:2B:BC:FF:1B:67:E7:69:07:2B:DB:E4:C6:D9
        SHA1: 2E:98:D4:4B:E0:E7:B6:73:55:4E:5A:BE:C1:9F:EA:9B:71:18:60:BB
        Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
        Version: 3
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl>
```

#### Configuring WebLogic

You need to enable SSL for WebLogic server's Admin and managed servers by following the steps as provided in Configuring the Application Server for SSL section.

### Configuring Nodemanager

You need to secure the Node manager by following the steps in Securing Nodemanager with SSL Certificates section.

#### Importing Self Signed Root Certificate into Java Virtual Machine (JVM) **Trust Store**

In order for the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) to trust in your newly created certificate, import your custom certificates into your JVM trust store.

Perform the following steps to import the root certificate into JVM Trust Store:

- Ensure that JAVA\_HOME has been already set up.
- **2.** Run the following command:

\$keytool -import -trustcacerts -file rootCer.cer -alias selfsignedcert -keystore cacerts

#### Example:

```
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/product/jdk1.1.7_
30.64 \text{bit/jre/lib/security} > \text{keytool -import -trustcacerts -file}
/u00/webadmin/ssl/root.cer -alias apphost2 -keystore
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk1.6.0_30.64bit/jre/lib/security/cacerts -storepass
[spass default is changeit]
Owner: CN=apphost2, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>"
Issuer: CN=apphost2, OU=<Organization Unit>, O=<company>, L=<city>, ST=<state or
province>, C=<country>"
Serial number: 515d4bfb
Valid from: Thu Apr 04 05:46:35 EDT 2013 until: Fri Apr 04 05:46:35 EDT 2014
Certificate fingerprints:
         MD5: AB:FA:18:2B:BC:FF:1B:67:E7:69:07:2B:DB:E4:C6:D9
         SHA1: 2E:98:D4:4B:E0:E7:B6:73:55:4E:5A:BE:C1:9F:EA:9B:71:18:60:BB
         Signature algorithm name: SHA1withRSA
         Version: 3
Trust this certificate? [no]: yes
Certificate was added to keystore
apphost2:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/product/jdk1.6.0_
30.64bit/jre/lib/security>
```

### **Disabling Hostname Verification**

This section has been covered under Disabling Hostname Verification section.

### Converting PKCS7 Certificate to x.509 Certificate

Certificate authorities provide signed certificates of different formats. However, not all formats of certificates can be imported to Java based keystores. Hence the certificates need to be converted to usable form. Java based Keystores supports x.509 format of certificate.

The following example demonstrates converting certificate PKCS 7 to x.509 format:

- **1.** Copy the PKCS 7 certificate file to a Windows desktop.
- Rename the file and provide .p7b extension.
- Open the .p7b file.
- **4.** Click the plus ( + ) symbol.
- **5.** Click the Certificates directory.

An Intermediary certificate if provided by CA for trust.

**Note:** If an Extended Validation certificate is being converted you should see three files. The End Entity certificate and the two EV intermediate CA's.

- **6.** Right click on your certificate file.
- **7.** Select All Tasks > Export.
- 8. Click Next.
- **9.** Select Base-64 encoded X.509 (.cer) > click Next.
- **10.** Browse to a location to store the file.
- 11. Enter a File name.

For example, MyCert. The .cer extension is added automatically.

- 12. Click Save.
- 13. Click Next.
- 14. Click Save.

The certificate can be now imported into java based keystores.

#### Example:

```
apphost1:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl> keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias
apphost1 -file /u00/webadmin/ssl/cert-x509.cer -keystore
/u00/webadmin/product/jdk/jre/lib/security/cacerts
Enter keystore password: [default is changeit]
Certificate was added to keystore
apphost1:[10.3.6_apps] /u00/webadmin/ssl>
```

## **Functional Security for Applications Using Fusion Middleware**

The chapter provides guidance for administrators to understand, configure, and customize functional security for Application Development Framework (ADF) applications or applications using Fusion Middleware platform security infrastructure like OBIEE.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Understanding the Security Model
- **Key Security Elements**
- Permission Grants and Inheritance
- Managing Authorization
- Customizing the Default Security Configuration
- Customizing the Policy Store

#### **Understanding the Security Model**

The Oracle Retail Fusion security model is built upon the Oracle Fusion Middleware platform, which incorporates the Java security model. The Java model is a role-based, declarative model that employs container-managed security where resources are protected by roles that are assigned to users. However, extensive knowledge of the Java-based architecture is unnecessary when using the Oracle Fusion Middleware Security model.

#### **Key Security Elements**

The Oracle Fusion Middleware security model depends upon the following key elements in order to provide uniform security and identity management across the enterprise:

#### Application policy

Application permissions are granted to members of its application roles. In the default security configuration, each application role conveys a predefined set of permissions. Permission grants are defined and managed in an application policy. After an application role is associated with an application policy, that role becomes a Grantee of the policy. An application policy is specific to a particular application.

#### Application role

After permission grants are defined in an application policy, an application role can be mapped to that policy, and the application role then becomes the mechanism to convey the permissions. In this manner, an application role becomes the container that grants permissions to its members. The permissions become associated with the application role through the relationship between policy and role. After groups are mapped to an application role, the corresponding permissions are granted to all members equally. Membership is defined in the application role definition. Application roles are assigned in accordance with specific conditions and are granted dynamically based on the conditions present at the time authentication occurs. More than one group can be members of the same application role.

#### Authentication provider

An authentication provider is used to access user and group information and is responsible for authenticating users. An Oracle WebLogic Server authentication provider enables you to manage users and groups in one place.

An identity store contains user name, password, and group membership information. An authentication provider accesses the data in the identity store and authenticates against it. For example, when a user name and password combination is entered at login, the authentication provider searches the identity store to verify the credentials provided. The Oracle Retail Fusion application's default authentication provider authenticates against Oracle Internet Directory (OID).

#### Users and groups

A user is an entity that can be authenticated. A user can be a person, such as an application user, or a software entity, such as a client application. Every user is given a unique identifier.

Groups are organized collections of users that have something in common. Users should be organized into groups with similar access needs in order to facilitate efficient security management.

#### Security realm

An Oracle Retail Fusion application is installed on an Oracle WebLogic Server domain, which is created during installation. The Oracle Retail Fusion application security is managed within the security realm for this Oracle WebLogic Server domain. A security realm acts as a scoping mechanism. Each security realm consists of a set of configured security providers, users, groups, security roles, and security policies. Only one security realm can be active for the domain. The Oracle Retail Fusion application's authentication is performed by the authentication provider configured for the default security realm for the WebLogic Server domain in which it is installed. Oracle WebLogic Server Administration Console is the administration tool used for managing an Oracle WebLogic Server domain.

#### **Permission Grants and Inheritance**

Each Oracle Retail Fusion application provides application-specific permissions for accessing different features. Application permissions are typically granted by becoming a member in an application role. Permissions can be granted in two ways through membership in an application role (direct) and through group and role hierarchies (inheritance). Application role membership can be inherited by nature of the application role hierarchy. In the default security configuration, each application role is pre configured to grant a predefined set of permissions. Groups are mapped to an application role. The mapping of a group to a role conveys the role's permissions to all members of the group. In short, permissions are granted in Oracle Retail Fusion applications by establishing the following relationships:

- A group defines a set of users having similar system access requirements. Users are added as members to one or more groups according to the level of access required.
- Application roles are defined to represent the role a user typically performs when using the Oracle Retail Fusion application.
- The groups of users are mapped to one or more application roles that match the type of access required by the population.
- An application role is mapped to the application policy that grants the set of permissions required by the role type (an administrator, an author, a consumer).
- Group membership can be inherited by nature of the group hierarchy. Application roles mapped to inherited groups are also inherited, and those permissions are likewise conveyed to the members.

User permissions are determined by the system as follows:

- 1. A user enters credentials into a Web browser at login. The user credentials are authenticated by the authentication provider against data contained in the identity store.
- 2. After successful authentication, a Java subject and principal combination is issued, which is populated with the user name and a user's groups.
- **3.** A list of the user's groups is generated and checked against the application roles. A list is created of the application roles that are mapped to each of the user's groups.
- A user's permission grants are determined from knowing which application roles the user is a member of.

A user can also be granted permissions if they inherit other application roles. Members of application roles can include other groups and application roles. The result is a hierarchical role structure where permissions can be inherited in addition to being explicitly granted. This hierarchy provides that a group is granted the permissions of the application role for which it is a member, and the permissions granted by all roles descended from that role.

For example, the default security configuration includes several predefined groups and application roles. The default BIAdministrator application role includes the BIAdministrators group, the BIAuthor application role includes the BIAuthors group, and the BIConsumer application role includes the BIConsumers group. The default BIAdministrator application role is a member the BIAuthor application role, and the BIAuthor application role is a member of the BIConsumer application role. The members of these application roles inherit permissions as follows. Members of the BIAdministrators group are granted all the permissions of the BIAdministrator role, the BIAuthor role, and the BIConsumer role. By nature of this role hierarchy, the user who is a member of a particular group is granted permissions both explicitly and through inheritance.

Note: By themselves, groups and group hierarchies do not enable any privilege to access resources controlled by an application. Privileges are conveyed by the permission grants defined in an application policy. A group or application role becomes a Grantee of the application policy. The application policy Grantee conveys the permissions and this is done by becoming a member of the Grantee (application role).

Figure 8–1 shows these relationships between the default groups and application roles.

Figure 8–1 Relationships between the Default Groups and Application Roles

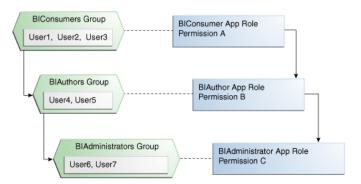


Table 8–1 summarizes how permissions are granted explicitly or are inherited in the previous example and in Figure 8–1.

Table 8–1 Permissions Granted by the Role Hierarchy Example

| User Name                 | Group Membership:<br>Explicit/Inherited | Application Role<br>Membership:<br>Explicit/Inherited | Permission Grants:<br>Explicit/Inherited |
|---------------------------|---|---|--|
| User1,<br>User2,<br>User3 | BIConsumers: Explicit                   | BIConsumer: Explicit                                  | Permission A: Explicit                   |
| User4,<br>User5           | BIAuthors: Explicit                     | BIAuthor: Explicit                                    | Permission B: Explicit                   |
|                           | BIConsumers: Inherited                  | BIConsumer: Inherited                                 | Permission A: Inherited                  |
| User6,<br>User7           | BIAdministrators: Explicit              | BIAdministrator: Explicit                             | Permission C: Explicit                   |
|                           | BIAuthors: Inherited                    | BIAuthor: Inherited                                   | Permission B: Inherited                  |
|                           | BIConsumers: Inherited                  | BIConsumer: Inherited                                 | Permission A: Inherited                  |

#### **Managing Authorization**

After a user is authenticated, further access to application resources is controlled by the granting of permissions, also known as authorization. The policy store contains the system and application-specific policies and roles required for an application. A policy store can be file-based, LDAP-based or Oracle database and holds the mapping definitions between the default Oracle Retail Fusion Application's application roles, permissions and groups. Oracle Retail Fusion Application's permissions are granted by mapping groups from the identity store to application roles and permission grants located in the policy store. These mapping definitions between groups (identity store) and the application roles (policy store) are also kept in the policy store.

**Note:** The best practice is to map groups instead of individual users to application roles. Controlling membership in a group reduces the complexity of tracking access rights for multiple individual users. Group membership is controlled in the identity store.

The system-jazn-data.xml file is installed and configured as the default policy store. You can continue to use the default store and modify it as needed for your environment, or you can migrate its data to an Oracle database.

The policy store and credential store must be of the same type in your environment. That is, both must be either filed-based, LDAP-based, or Oracle database.

Permissions must be defined in a manner that the Oracle Retail Fusion Application understands. All valid Oracle Retail Fusion Application permissions are premapped to application policies, which are in turn premapped to the default application roles. You cannot create new permissions in the policy store. However, you can customize the default application policy permission grants and application role mappings as well as create your own.

### Accessing Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control

Launch Fusion Middleware Control by entering its URL into a Web browser. The URL includes the name of the host and the administration port number assigned during the installation. This URL takes the following form: http://hostname:port\_number/em. The default port is 7001. For more information about using Fusion Middleware Control, see Oracle Fusion Middleware Administrator's Guide.

### To display the Security menu in Fusion Middleware Control

1. Log on to Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control by entering the URL in a Web browser. For example, http://hostname:7001/em

The Fusion Middleware Control login page is displayed.

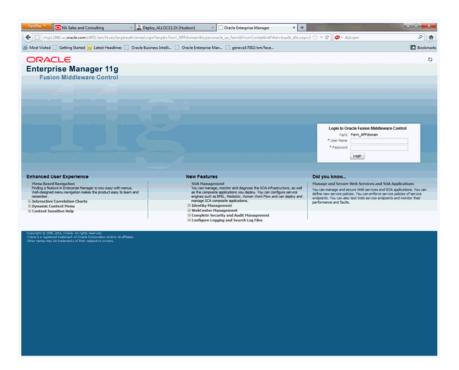


Figure 8–2 Fusion Middlware Control Login Page

- 2. Enter the Oracle Retail Fusion Application's administrative user name and password and click **Login**.
  - The password is the one you supplied during the installation of Oracle Retail Fusion Application. If these values have been changed, then use the current administrative user name and password combination.
- From the target navigation pane, click **WebLogic Domain** to display **APPdomain**. Display the **Security** menu by selecting one of the following methods:
  - Right click **APPdomain** to display the Security menu.
  - Select **Security** to display a submenu.

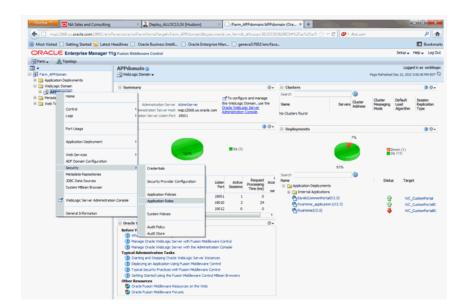


Figure 8–3 Enterprise Manager AppDomain Security Submenu

- From the content pane, go to WebLogic Domain menu and select Security
- Select **Security** to display a submenu.

Figure 8–4 Enterprise Manager WebLogic Domain Security Submenu

### **Managing the Policy Store Using Fusion Middleware Control**

Use Fusion Middleware Control to manage the Oracle Retail Fusion Application's application policies and application roles maintained in the policy store whether it is filed-based, LDAP-based, or Oracle database.

**Caution:** Oracle recommends you to make a copy of the original system-jazn-data.xml policy file and place it in a safe location. Use the copy of the original file to restore the default policy store configuration, if needed. Changes to the default security configuration may lead to an unwanted state. The default installation location is MW\_HOME/user\_projects/domain/your\_ domain/config/fmwconfig.

The following are common policy store management tasks:

- Modifying the membership of an application role. For more information, see Modifying Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control section.
- Creating a new application role from the beginning. For more information, see To create a new application role section.
- Creating a new application role based on an existing application role. For more information, see To create an application role based on an existing one section.

### Modifying Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control

Members can be added or deleted from an application role using Fusion Middleware Control. You must perform these tasks while in the WebLogic Domain that Oracle Retail Fusion Application is installed in.

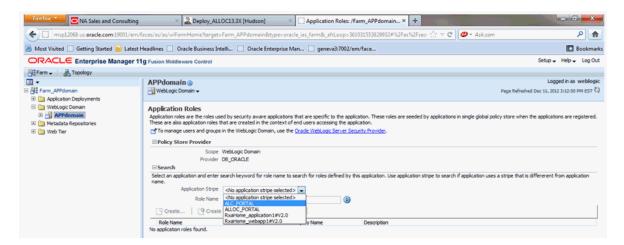
**Caution:** You need to be careful when changing the permission grants and membership for the default application roles. Changes could result in an unusable system.

Valid members of an application role are groups, or other application roles. The process of becoming a member of an application role is called mapping. That is, being mapped to an application role is to become a member of an application role. The best practice is to map groups instead of individual users to application roles for easier maintenance.

#### To add or remove members from an application role

- 1. Log in to Fusion Middleware Control, navigate to **Security**, then select **Application Roles** to display the **Application Roles** page.
  - For information on navigating to the Security menu, see Accessing Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control section.
- 2. Choose **Select Application Stripe to Search**, then select the policy stripe name (example, ALC\_CORE) from the list.
- **3.** Click the search icon next to **Role Name**.

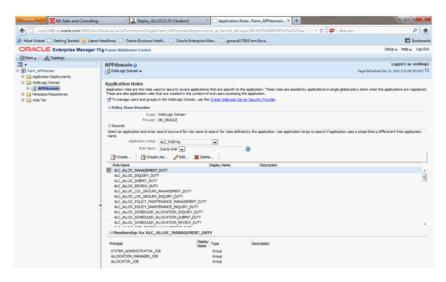
Figure 8-5 Retail Fusion Application's Application Roles Window



The Oracle Retail Fusion Application's application roles are displayed.

Figure 8–6 displays the default application roles.

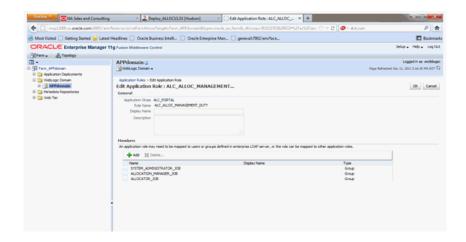
Figure 8–6 Default Application Roles Window



Select the cell next to the application role name and click **Edit** to display the **Edit Application Role** page.

Figure 8–7 shows ALC\_ALLOC\_MANAGEMENT\_DUTY role is selected.

Figure 8–7 Edit Application Role Window

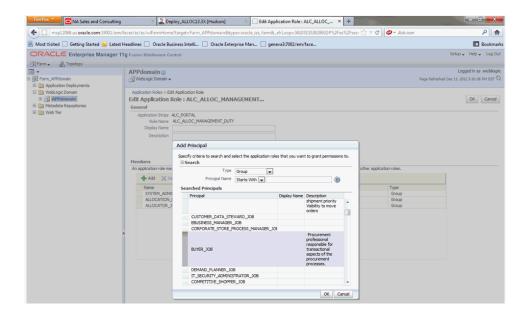


**Note:** You can add or delete members from the **Edit Application** Role page. The valid members are application roles, and groups

- Select from the following options:
  - To delete a member: From Members, select from Name the member to activate the Delete button and click Delete.
  - To add a member: Click the Add button that corresponds to the member type being added. Select from Add Application Role, Add Group, and Add User.
- For adding a member, complete **Search** and select from the available list and click

Figure 8–8 shows the Add Group dialog and after the BUYER\_JOB group has been selected.

Figure 8-8 Add Group Dialog Window



The added member displays in the **Members** column corresponding to the application role modified in the **Application Roles** page.

### Creating Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control

Following are the two methods for creating a new application role:

- Create New: A new application role is created. Members can be added at the same time or you can save the new role after naming it and add members later.
- **Copy Existing**: A new application role is created by copying an existing application role. The copy contains the same members as the original, and is made a Grantee of the same application policy. You can modify the copy as needed to finish creating the new role.

### To create a new application role

1. Log in to Fusion Middleware Control, navigate to **Security**, then select **Application Roles** to display the **Application Roles** page.

For information, see Accessing Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control section.

2. Choose **Select Application Stripe to Search**, and then click the search icon next to Role Name.

The Oracle Retail Fusion Application's application roles displays.

- **3.** Click **Create** to display the **Create Application Role** page. You can enter all information at once or you can enter a **Role Name**, save it, and complete the remaining fields later.
- **4.** In the **General** section, specify the following:
  - **Role Name** Enter the name of the application role.
  - **Display Name** Enter the display name for the application role. This is an optional field.
  - **Description** Enter a description for the application role. This is an optional
- 5. In the **Members** section, select the groups, or application roles to be mapped to the application role.
- **6.** Select **Add Application Role** or **Add Group** accordingly.
- To search in the dialog box that displays, specify the following:
  - Enter a name in **Name** field and click the blue button to search.
  - Select from the results returned in the **Available** box.
  - Click **OK** to return to the **Create Application Role** page.
  - Repeat the steps until all members are added to the application role.
- **8.** Click **OK** to return to the **Application Roles** page.

The application role just created displays in the table at the bottom of the page.

#### To create an application role based on an existing one

1. Log in to Fusion Middleware Control, navigate to **Security**, then select **Application Roles** to display the **Application Roles** page.

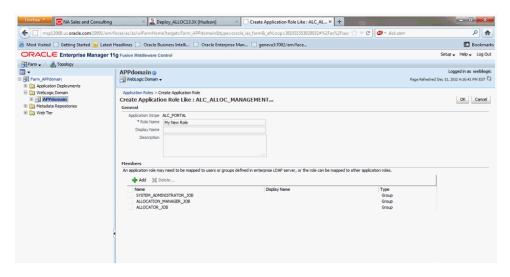
For more information, see Accessing Oracle Enterprise Manager Fusion Middleware Control section.

2. Choose Select Application Stripe to Search, and then click the search icon next to Role Name.

The Oracle Retail Fusion Application's application roles is displayed.

- **3.** Select an application role from the list to enable the action buttons.
- **4.** Click **Create Like** to display the **Create Application Role Like** page. The **Members** section is completed with the same application roles, groups that are mapped to the original role.
- **5.** Complete the **Role Name**, **Display Name**, and **Description** fields. Example 8–9 shows an application role based upon ALC\_ALLOC\_ MANAGEMENT\_DUTY after being named **MyNewRole**, as an example.

Figure 8–9 Create Application Role Window



Use **Add** and **Delete** to modify the members as appropriate and click **OK**.

The just created application role displays in the table at the bottom of the page. The following figure shows the example MyNewRole that is based upon the default ALC\_ALLOC\_MANAGEMENT\_DUTY application role.

# **Customizing the Default Security Configuration**

You can customize the default security configuration in the following ways:

- Create new application roles. For more information, see To create a new application role section.
- Modifying membership in an Application Role. For more information, see Modifying Application Roles Using Fusion Middleware Control section.

# **Customizing the Policy Store**

The Fusion Middleware Security model can be customized for your environment by creating your own application roles and modifying membership of application roles. Existing application roles can be modified by adding or removing members as needed. For more information about managing application policies and application roles, see Oracle Fusion Middleware Application Security Guide.

**Note:** Before creating a new application role and adding it to the default Oracle Retail Fusion Application's security configuration, familiarize yourself with how permission and group inheritance works. It is important when constructing a role hierarchy that circular dependencies are not introduced. The best practice is to leave the default security configuration in place and first incorporate your customized application roles in a test environment. For more information, see Permission Grants and Inheritance section.

### **Session Timeout**

Session timeout is defined at the application server level. It is 60 minutes by default, but can be changed through WebLogic configuration.

# **ReST Services Security Consideration**

The chapter provides the details on how to setup security for Representational State Transfer (ReST) Services.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- One Way SSL
- One Way SSL ReST Services

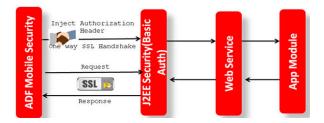
### One Way SSL

With one-way SSL, the server is required to present a certificate to the client but the client is not required to present a certificate to the server. To successfully negotiate an SSL connection, the client must authenticate the server, but the server will accept a connection from any client. One-way SSL is common on the Internet where customers want to create secure connections before they share personal data. Often, clients will also use SSL to log on in order for the server can authenticate them.

ReST Committee recommends the use of one way SSL over ReST Services for 16.0.

# One Way SSL - ReST Services

Figure 9–1 One way SSL: ReST Services



See the following sequence:

- ADF Mobile Security Set at the Mobile Client Level to Allow Authentication.
- ADF Mobile Client Injects Authorization Header for Every Service Call (configuration changes).
- 3. J2EE based Basic Authentication (SSL) is configured in the ReST Service Web Application Descriptor to allow secure connectivity to ReST Service.

# Part II

# Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS)

The following chapters provide guidance for administrators, developers, and system integrators who securely administer, customize, and integrate the Oracle Retail Merchandising System (RMS) application.

Part II contains the following chapters:

- Understanding Security
- Post Installation Application Administration
- Extending/Customization

# **Understanding Security**

This chapter covers the technical overview of the authentication process used for RMS, Oracle Retail Trade Management (RTM) using Oracle Access manager and Single Sign-On.

Further, it details the security considerations and implementations that are part of the Database, Data level security, as well as the Application layer.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Security Features of the Application
- **Encryption and Hashing**
- Purchase Order Approval Amount

**Note:** RTM share the same database as that of RMS. The Security features that are applicable to RMS are applicable to RTM as well.

# **Security Features of the Application**

The security features of the Application are as follows:

- Access Control It is the process of restricting access to a particular entity based upon a broad range of criteria that may or may not include the attributes related to a particular user.
- **Authentication** It is the process of verifying the identity of a user. The authentication process usually requires a user to provide a user name and password or a combination thereof, upon signing into an application.
- **Authorization** It is the process of checking to see if an authenticated user has the privilege to access particular system functionality.
- Data Authorization It is the process of determining an authenticated user's rights to act upon a particular set of data. This process typically checks if the authenticated user is linked to a certain level in the organization hierarchy and/or a certain level in the merchandise hierarchy.
- Role-Based Access Within the Oracle Retail's systems, users are assigned to different roles. The role logical grouping has different access rights to specific functions within the various Oracle Retail Systems.
- **User Store** It is a repository that holds user data required for authentication and authorization processes.

In order to ensure users are limited to parts of the application and information that is relevant to their business role, RMS has a three-tier security structure.

The three levels of security offered by RMS are as follows:

- Database-level security This is a built in feature of Oracle Database, based on database roles.
- **Application-level security** This is the screen-level security based on Application User roles.
- **Data-level security** This is built into RMS to give a client the ability to further limit user access to information.

### Database-level security

For information on this section, see Chapter 2.

### Application-level security

The Application-level security requires the users to authenticate at login and restricts them to resources only for which they are authorized.

The user's access to either entire areas of the system (for example, Purchase Orders) the modes in which users can access areas (for example, viewing Purchase Orders only) will be restricted through this.

The users are associated to groups that are mapped to application roles. The application specific permissions are granted to these security roles. For more information on the security roles, see Table 11–1.

### **Data-level security**

Data-level security restricts user access to specific data within the merchandising system. The client has the ability to limit user data access both from a merchandise hierarchy perspective and organizational hierarchy perspective. For example, a buyer for the Small Appliances department could have data level security put in place so that they only have the ability to access items within the Small Appliances department. This prevents users from accessing information that does not pertain to their job.

Unlike the other layers of security, this level of security can be configured by the client in the RMS through the Data Upload utility available in the Application.

- 1. Data level security is defined at the group level in RMS.
- **2.** For a user to have access to any data, the LDAP user ID used to login to the RMS application must be defined in the SEC\_USER table as an 'APPLICATION\_USER\_ ID'.
- 3. The user must be assigned to a security group in SEC\_USER\_GROUP. This is done through associating the USER\_SEQ on SEC\_USER assigned to the APPLICATION USER ID with a GROUP ID on SEC GROUP.
- **4.** The security group can only access the merch hierarchies and the org hierarchies assigned to the user in FILTER\_GROUP\_MERCH and FILTER\_GROUP\_ORG respectively.
- 5. If a security group is NOT assigned to any data in FILTER\_GROUP\_MERCH or FILTER GROUP ORG, users in this group are considered 'super users' and will have access to all merch hierarchies or all org hierarchies respectively

Security groups are powerful tools for data authorization in RMS; however, they require significant administration. Security groups are defined on RMS tables, so it is possible that the information can be interfaced onto these tables from an external system aware of the merchandise and organizational hierarchies.

The item/location security in RMS is based on relationships defined between groups of users and merchandise and organizational data.

The Security groups are defined on the SEC\_GROUP table. These security groups are meant to define users with many job tasks who need to access the same information.

### SEC\_GROUP

The SEC\_GROUP table stores group attributes. The Security groups allow users who need similar data to be grouped together.

- **GROUP\_ID** This contains the unique identifier associated with the security group.
- **GROUP\_NAME** This contains the name of the security group.
- **ROLE** This contains the role that a client wants to assign to this group. This field is referenced in the code type ROLE. There are no pre-defined values for this field and it is completely user-defined. This field does not have any functionality linking it to Oracle Roles or any other type of roles used within the RMS. This field is used within the regionality dialog for searching and reporting.

The Security groups are defined in the RMS user interface. Users are added as members of a group by associations on the SEC\_USER\_GROUP table.

### SEC USER GROUP

The SEC\_USER\_GROUP table link users.

The security groups are as follows:

- GROUP ID This contains the unique identifier associated with the security group as defined in the SEC\_GROUP table.
- **USER SEQ** This contains the security user assigned to the security group. It references the user sequence defined on SEC\_USER table.

### SEC USER

This table holds the database user ID and the application user ID associated with a security user.

The application user ID is copied to database session context RETAIL\_CTX. APP\_ USER\_ID. The RMS security table SEC\_USER now also holds application user ID in addition to database user ID. The data security function uses the application user ID for applying the security policy if database session context RETAIL\_CTX. APP\_USER\_ ID is available else, it uses the logged in database ID for applying security policy.

The security groups are as follows:

- DATABASE USER ID This column holds the database user login ID assigned to the security user.
- **USER SEQ** This is a sequence generated number that uniquely identifies a security user.
- **APPLICATION USER ID** This column holds the application user ID set up in enterprise LDAP for the security user.

The security groups can be associated with specific locations using the SEC\_GROUP\_ LOC MATRIX tables.

The security group information is also used to determine the information that users have access to in RMS Search screens and LOVs/field validation. If a user is associated with a security group that has access to a limited range of items and the user searches in the item Search screen, the search will only return results that are in the items the user has access to. If the same user enters an item number in an item field, validation will ensure that the user has access to this item. Any item LOV will also display only the user 's list of items.

The intersection between security user groups and merchandise hierarchy levels are stored on the FILTER\_GROUP\_MERCH table.

- **SEC\_GROUP\_ID** This is the ID of the User Security group as defined on the SEC\_GROUP table.
- FILTER\_MERCH\_LEVEL This is the merchandise hierarchy level assigned to the User Security Group. This can be a code representing group, department, class, or subclass.
- **FILTER\_MERCH\_ID** This is a group or department included in the filtering.
- FILTER\_MERCH\_ID\_CLASS This is the class under the department which is included in the filtering.
- FILTER\_MERCH\_ID\_SUBCLASS This is the subclass under the class which is included in the filtering.

The intersection between security user groups and organizational hierarchy level is stored in FILTER\_GROUP\_ORG table.

- **SEC\_GROUP\_ID** This is the ID of the User Security group as defined on the SEC\_GROUP table.
- FILTER\_ORG\_LEVEL This is the Organization hierarchy level assigned to the User Security Group. The valid values are contained in the CODE\_DETAIL table with a CODE TYPE of FLOW.
- FILTER\_ORG\_ID This is the ID of the Organization hierarchy level assigned to the User Security Group.

RMS includes two install scripts that sets up some of this security information. The install script superGroup.sql creates a security group that must not to be associated with any level of the merchandise or organizational hierarchy. Members of this group will have access to all data in the Application. The install script superUser.sql associates the user running the script with the superUser group, and therefore ensures that the user running the script will have access to all data in the system.

### RMS Users and Data Security

You need to create user roles within RMS and provide users with a mechanism for accessing the system. When security is leveraged, it controls a user's access to individual application functions and data sets.

Users in RMS are set up by the database administrator using a user creation script.

The Database Roles are created in RMS. Object level privileges are assigned to the roles that are created. Then business users are created and assigned these roles, hence allowing users to have access to objects for all the roles that are assigned to them.

A sample script is packaged with the product which contains privileges for the following:

- DELETE tables
- EXECUTE type, procedure, package, and function
- INSERT into tables and views
- SELECT sequence, table, view, and materialized view (except four ReSA tables SA\_TRAN\_TENDER\_REV, SA\_BANK\_ACH, SA\_TRAN\_TENDER, SA\_BANK\_STORE)
- **5.** UPDATE table (except four ReSA tables SA\_TRAN\_TENDER\_REV, SA\_BANK\_ACH, SA\_TRAN\_TENDER, SA\_BANK\_STORE)

#### Note:

- System level privileges like Execute Any, Select Any, Insert Any, should not be granted to the users or to the roles. Granting such privileges would override the object level privileges described above as the user would have access to perform any action beyond his duty
- Packages, procedures, and functions in RMS are defined as AUTHID CURRENT\_USER to execute using only the privileges of the user that invokes it. Certain packages that require schema owner privileges are exempted from this change.

Each RMS database user has synonyms to the master RMS schema and is able to update and modify data within that schema, and cannot change the structure of the tables and objects. This user structure is specific to RMS and RTM. Applications such as RPM, Allocation, and ReIM use other means to manage users. User management for each application is discussed within its respective section.

When all of the security tools for RMS are effectively leveraged by a client a user can become a powerful tool to not only grant access to a system, but to ensure that every employee is systematically focused on the aspect of the client's business that they are responsible for.

# **Encryption and Hashing**

Encryption and hashing techniques are a part of Oracle Advanced Security, hence System and Database Administrators are recommended to refer Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide 12 C Release 1 for more details.

The details of encryption and hashing are as follows:

- ORDCUST and SVC\_FULFILORDCUST tables are in encrypted tablespace as it stores sensitive information about the customers.
- RETAIL\_SERVICE\_REPORT\_URL table is used to hold the retail service code, retail service name, and URL for the Web services for Oracle Retail Financial Integration (RFI). The column sys\_account is an encrypted column which stores the system account name.
- The function that perform encryption/decryption are further maintained as wrapped PLSQL functions.

For more information on Merch Mobile Security Consideration, see ReST Services Security Consideration chapter.

For more information on ReST Services Security Consideration, see the Applications Operations Guide.

# **Purchase Order Approval Amount**

The Order Approval amount which determines the upper limit a user can approve on an order can be restricted through the application user roles.

- If a user has the privilege to approve a purchase order in RMS, the user can only approve an order up to a certain monetary amount. This limit is defined at the role level in RMS
- For a user to approve any order amount, the LDAP user id used to login to the RMS application (e.g. RMS\_ADMIN) must be defined in the SEC\_USER table as an 'APPLICATION\_USER\_ID'.
- The USER\_SEQ on SEC\_USER associated with the APPLICATION\_USER\_ID must be assigned to a security ROLE in the SEC\_USER\_ROLE table.
- The security ROLE must be defined on the RTK\_ROLE\_PRIVS table. ORD\_APPR\_ AMT on RTK\_ROLE\_PRIVS indicates the upper limit that the role is allowed to approve on an order. ORD\_APPR\_AMT is an optional field. If not defined, then the role can approve any order amount.

**Note:** To avoid errors, make sure you have set up the Purchase Order Approver permissions to access the Buyer Dashboard.

# **Post Installation - Application Administration**

This chapter covers the administration tasks performed during post installation of RMS application. The section covers the roles and permissions granted for Oracle Advanced Queuing, setting up table level auditing through the application UI, Security Policies around views, formweb.cfg, and the steps to secure the Webservice calls.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Application Security Configuration**
- Data Security Views
- Other Common Application Administration
- Post Installation Steps for Webservice Security

# **Application Security Configuration**

Access control of system resources is achieved by requiring users to authenticate at login and by restricting users to only those resources for which they are authorized. A default security configuration is available for immediate use after the Oracle Retail Fusion application is installed and is configured to use the Oracle Fusion Middleware security model. The default configuration includes 11 predefined security roles for application specific permission grants. Users can be added to predefined groups that are mapped to pre-configured application roles. RMS is pre-configured to grant specific application permissions.

Table 11–1 Privileges

| Name                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| View Application Administration Priv | This privilege provides view access to the System Options screen, the Download Blank Template and the Foundation Data Download screens. Within the Foundation Data Download screen, this privilege provides access to download the following to a spreadsheet: Codes and Descriptions, Custom Flex Attribute Foundation, Languages, Error Messages, Security Users, Security Groups, Associate Users to Groups, Associate Locations to Groups, Filter Groups, and/or Role and Privileges. |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
| Maintain Application Administration Priv             | This privilege provides create/edit access to the System Options, the Foundation Data Download, the Foundation Data Upload, and the Foundation Data Issues screens. Foundation Data that can be created and maintained via spreadsheets with this privilege includes Codes and Descriptions, Custom Flex Attribute Foundation, Languages, Error Messages, Security Users, Security Groups, Associate Users to Groups, Associate Locations to Groups, Filter Groups, and Role and Privileges. |
| View Report Options Priv                             | A privilege for viewing Report Options and department level Report Option Exceptions.  |
| Maintain Report Options Priv                         | A privilege for creating and maintaining Report Options and department level Report Option Exceptions.   |
| View Translations Priv                               | This privilege provides view access to the centralized data 'Translations' screen.   |
| Maintain Translations Priv                           | This privilege provides edit access to the centralized data 'Translations' screen.   |
| View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                          | This privilege provides view access to the Asynchronous Job Log and the Data Loading Status screens.   |
| Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                      | This privilege provides edit access to the Data Loading Status, the Cost Event Search, and the Cost Event screens.   |
| Maintain Custom Flex Attributes Priv                 | A privilege for creating and maintaining Custom Flex Attribute definitions.  |
| View Custom Flex Attributes Priv                     | A privilege for viewing Custom Flex Attribute definitions.   |
| View Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Priv     | Gives users ability to download supporting data for Inventory, Price and Cost, and Items.  |
| Maintain Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Priv | Gives users ability to upload supporting data for Inventory, Price and Cost, and Items.  |
| View Competitive Shop Priv                           | A privilege for viewing Competitive Shop information including assignment of competitors to stores, viewing competitive price history.   |
| Maintain Competitive Shop Priv                       | A privilege for creating and editing Competitive<br>Shop information including Assigning<br>Competitors to Stores, creating shop requests.   |
| Approve Contracts Priv                               | A privilege for approving contracts.   |
| Search Contracts Priv                                | A privilege for searching for contracts  |
| View Contracts Priv                                  | A privilege for viewing contracts and contract cost history.   |
| Maintain Contracts Priv                              | A privilege for creating and maintaining contracts. Including creating orders from contracts.  |
| Submit Contracts Priv                                | A privilege for submitting contracts.  |
| Approve Cost Changes Priv                            | A privilege for approving cost changes.  |
|  |  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                  | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Search Cost Changes Priv              | A privilege for searching for cost changes.  |
| View Cost Changes Priv                | A privilege for viewing cost changes.  |
| Maintain Cost Changes Priv            | A privilege for creating and maintaining cost changes.   |
| Submit Cost Changes Priv              | A privilege for submitting cost changes.   |
| View Cost Zones Priv                  | A privilege for viewing Cost Zone Groups and Cost Zones.   |
| Maintain Cost Zones Priv              | A privilege for creating and maintaining Cost Zone Groups and Cost Zones.  |
| View Buyer Dashboard Priv             | This privilege gives the user access to the Buyer Dashboard.   |
| View Finance Analyst Dashboard Priv   | This privilege gives the user access to the Finance Analyst Dashboard.   |
| View Inventory Analyst Dashboard Priv | This privilege gives the user access to the Inventory Analyst Dashboard.   |
| View Data Steward Dashboard Priv      | This privilege gives the user access to the Data Steward Dashboard.  |
| Approve Deals Priv                    | A privilege for approving deals.   |
| Search Deals Priv                     | A privilege for searching for deals.   |
| View Deals Priv                       | A privilege for viewing deals.   |
| Maintain Deals Priv                   | A privilege for creating and maintaining deals.  |
| Submit Deals Priv                     | A privilege for submitting deals.  |
| View Expense Profiles Priv            | A privilege for viewing Expense Profiles for Suppliers, Partners, and Countries.   |
| Maintain Expense Profiles Priv        | A privilege for creating and expenses Expense Profiles for Suppliers, Partners, and Countries.   |
| View Up Charges Priv                  | A privilege for viewing the association of Up Charges with Departments.  |
| Maintain Up Charges Priv              | A privilege for creating and editing the association of Up Charges with Departments.   |
| Maintain Average Cost Priv            | A privilege for creating average cost adjustments and viewing transaction data.  |
| View Budgets Priv                     | A privilege for the ability to download Monthly<br>Budget and Open to Buy information as well as<br>viewing the Open to Buy dashboard report.                                |
| Maintain Budgets Priv                 | Gives users ability to upload and download<br>Monthly Budget and Open to Buy information.  |
| View Finance Admin Priv               | Gives users ability to download supporting data<br>for GL Cross Reference, VAT, Terms, Currency<br>Exchange Type Mapping, Currency, and<br>Non-Merchandise Codes.            |
| Maintain Finance Admin Priv           | Gives users ability to upload and download<br>supporting data for GL Cross Reference, VAT,<br>Terms, Currency Exchange Type Mapping,<br>Currency, and Non-Merchandise Codes. |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| View Financial Control Priv                   | Gives users ability to download Half Data<br>Budget.  |
| Maintain Financial Control Priv               | Gives users ability to upload and download Half Data Budget.  |
| View GL Drill Back Priv                       | A privilege for viewing Fixed Deal Transaction<br>Data and GL drill back information.   |
| View Transaction Data Priv                    | A privilege for viewing Transaction Data and Late Posted Transactions dashboard report.   |
| View Franchise Cost Priv                      | A privilege for viewing franchise cost templates and cost relationships.  |
| Maintain Franchise Cost Priv                  | A privilege for creating and maintaining franchise cost templates and cost relationships.   |
| View Franchise Foundation Priv                | Gives users ability to download supporting data for Deal Pass Through and Franchise Customers.  |
| Maintain Franchise Foundation Priv            | Gives users ability to upload and download supporting data for Deal Pass Through and Franchise Customers.   |
| Approve Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Priv  | A privilege for approving franchise orders and returns.   |
| View Franchise Orders and Returns Priv        | A privilege for viewing franchise orders and returns.   |
| Maintain Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Priv | A privilege for creating and maintaining franchise orders and returns.  |
| Search Actual Landed Cost Priv                | A privilege for searching for actual landed cost.   |
| View Actual Landed Cost Priv                  | A privilege for viewing actual landed cost.   |
| Finalize Actual Landed Cost Priv              | A privilege for finalizing actual landed cost.  |
| Confirm Customs Entries Priv                  | A privilege for confirming customs entries.   |
| Search Customs Entries Priv                   | A privilege for searching for customs entries.  |
| View Customs Entries Priv                     | A privilege for viewing customs entries.  |
| Maintain Customs Entries Priv                 | A privilege for creating and maintaining customs entries.   |
| Submit Customs Entries Priv                   | A privilege for submitting/sending customs entries.   |
| View Import Foundation Priv                   | Gives users ability to download supporting data for the import process, including Freight Sizes, Freight Types, HTS Headings, HTS Heading Restraints, Quota Categories, HTS Import Country Setup, Tariff Treatments, Origin Country Tariff Treatments, OGAs, SCACs and timelines. Also included is the ability to download HTS definitions which include HTS, HTS Tariff Treatments, HTS Tariff Treatment Zones, HTS Fees, HTS Fee Zones, HTS Taxes, HTS Tax Zones, HTS Anti-Dumping, HTS Countervailing Duty, HTS Reference and HTS Other Government Agencies. |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                | Description  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Maintain Import Foundation Priv     | Gives users ability to download and upload supporting data for the import process, including Freight Sizes, Freight Types, HTS Headings, HTS Heading Restraints, Quota Categories, HTS Import Country Setup, Tariff Treatments, Origin Country Tariff Treatments, OGAs, SCACs and timelines. Also included is the ability to download HTS definitions which include HTS, HTS Tariff Treatments, HTS Tariff Treatment Zones, HTS Fees, HTS Fee Zones, HTS Taxes, HTS Tax Zones, HTS Anti-Dumping, HTS Countervailing Duty, HTS Reference and HTS Other Government Agencies. |
| View Import Items Priv              | A privilege for viewing import items, including, Item Suppliers, Item Supplier Countries, Item HTS, Item Import Attributes and Item Eligible Tariff Treatments.  |
| Maintain Import Items Priv          | A privilege for maintaining import items, including, Item Suppliers, Item Supplier Countries, Item HTS, Item Import Attributes, Item Eligible Tariff Treatments.   |
| Approve Letters of Credit Priv      | A privilege for approving letters of credit.   |
| Confirm Letters of Credit Priv      | A privilege for confirming letters of credit.  |
| Search Letters of Credit Priv       | A privilege for searching for letters of credit.   |
| View Letters of Credit Priv         | A privilege for viewing letters of credit.   |
| Maintain Letters of Credit Priv     | A privilege for creating and maintaining letters of credit.  |
| Submit Letters of Credit Priv       | A privilege for submitting letters of credit.  |
| Approve Obligations Priv            | A privilege for approving obligations.   |
| Search Obligations Priv             | A privilege for searching for obligations.   |
| View Obligations Priv               | A privilege for viewing obligations.   |
| Maintain Obligations Priv           | A privilege for creating and maintaining obligations.  |
| Search Transportation Priv          | A privilege for searching for transportation records.  |
| View Transportation Priv            | A privilege for viewing transportation records.  |
| Finalize Transportation Priv        | A privilege for finalizing transportation records, generating customs entries.   |
| Maintain Transportation Priv        | A privilege for creating and maintaining transportation records.   |
| Maintain Inventory Adjustments Priv | A privilege for creating inventory adjustments by item or by location, breaking sellable packs, and creating and maintaining product transformations.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| View Item Inventory and Sales Priv   | A privilege for view item inventory and sales information via the Item Location Inventory, Store Sales/Issues by Location, and Sellable Pack Inquiry screens, as well as the Daily Sales, Inventory Variance to Forecast, Inventory by Store, and Inventory by Warehouse, Unexpected Inventory, and Negative Inventory dashboard reports. |
| Approve Intercompany Transfers Priv  | A privilege for approving intercompany transfers. It is expected that a user with this privilege will also have the ability to view and maintain both intercompany and non-intercompany transfers.  |
| View Intercompany Transfers Priv     | A privilege for viewing intercompany transfers. It is expected that a user with this privilege will also have the View Transfers Priv.  |
| Maintain Intercompany Transfers Priv | A privilege for creating and maintaining intercompany transfers. It is expected that a user with this privilege will also have the ability to view, create and maintain non-intercompany transfers.   |
| Submit Intercompany Transfers Priv   | A privilege for submitting intercompany transfers. It is expected that a user with this privilege will also have the ability to view, create and maintain non-intercompany transfers.   |
| Approve MRTs Priv                    | A privilege for approving mass return transfers (MRTs).   |
| Search MRTs Priv                     | A privilege for searching for mass return transfers (MRTs).   |
| View MRTs Priv                       | A privilege for viewing mass return transfers (MRTs).   |
| Maintain MRTs Priv                   | A privilege for creating and maintaining mass return transfers (MRTs).  |
| Submit MRTs Priv                     | A privilege for submitting mass return transfers (MRTs).  |
| Approve RTVs Priv                    | A privilege for approving mass return transfers (MRTs).   |
| Search RTVs Priv                     | A privilege for searching for returns to vendors (RTVs).  |
| View RTVs Priv                       | A privilege for viewing returns to vendors (RTVs) and Overdue RTVs dashboard report.  |
| Maintain RTVs Priv                   | A privilege for creating and maintaining returns to vendors (RTVs).   |
| View Shipments and Receipts Priv     | A privilege for viewing shipment and receipt information via the Transportation Shipments, BOL Search, BOL, Shipment Search, Shipment, and Appointments screens, as well as the Early/Late Shipments and Stock Orders Pending Close dashboard reports.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                   | Description  |
|--|--|
| Maintain Shipments and Receipts Priv   | A privilege for creating and maintaining shipment and receipt information via the BOL Search, BOL, Receive by Carton, Receive by Item, Adjust Receipts, Shipment Search, Shipment, Order Shipment, MRT, Transfer, RTV, Stock Order Reconciliation, screens, as well as the Stock Orders Pending Close dashboard report.  |
|  | A user with this privilege will be able to close mass return transfers (MRTs), assuming they have the Maintain MRTs Priv as well. A user with this privilege will be able to ship returns to vendors (RTVs), assuming they have the Maintain RTVs Priv as well. A user with this privilege will be able to ship and close transfers, assuming they have the Maintain Transfers Priv. |
| Approve Transfers Priv                 | A privilege for approving transfers via the Transfer screen or the Transfers Pending Approval dashboard report.  |
| View Transfers Priv                    | A privilege for viewing transfers and appointments via the Transfer Search and Appointments screens, as well as the Overdue Transfers and Transfers Pending Approval dashboard reports.  |
| Search Transfers Priv                  | A privilege for searching for transfers via the Transfer Search screen.  |
| Maintain Transfers Priv                | A privilege for creating and maintaining transfers via the Transfer Search and Transfer screens, as well as the Unexpected Inventory, Overdue Transfers and Transfers Pending Approval dashboard reports.  |
| Submit Transfers Priv                  | A privilege for submitting transfers via the Transfer screen.  |
| Maintain Transfers with Finishing Priv | This priv allows users to create multi-leg transfers with finishers. Without this priv users can only create single leg transfers.   |
| View Diffs Priv                        | A privilege for viewing Diffs including Diff<br>Groups, Diff Ranges, and Pack Templates.   |
| Maintain Diffs Priv                    | A privilege for creating and maintaining Diffs including Diff Groups, Diff Ranges, and Pack Templates.   |
| Use Diffs Priv                         | The privilege provides access to the Diff Matrix, Diff Distribution, Re-distribution by Diff, and the Order, Transfer and Contract Parent/Diff Summary contextual reports. This privilege also provides access to the Differentiators container in the Item screen.  |
| Search Diff Ratios Priv                | A privilege for searching for Diff Ratios.   |
| View Diff Ratios Priv                  | A privilege for viewing Diff Ratios.   |
| Maintain Diff Ratios Priv              | A privilege for creating and maintaining Diff Ratios.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                  | Description  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Maintain/View Grocery Attributes Priv | A privilege for access to grocery attributes for grocery items.  |
| Approve Items Priv                    | A privilege for approving items.   |
| Search Items Priv                     | A privilege for searching for Items.   |
| View Item Lists Priv                  | A privilege for viewing item lists.  |
| Maintain Item Lists Priv              | A privilege for creating and maintaining item lists.   |
| View Item Locations Priv              | A privilege for viewing item location information including Item Up Charges and Scheduled Item Maintenance, also to view WAC Variance dashboard report.  |
| Maintain Item Locations Priv          | A privilege for maintaining item location information including Item Up Charges, Scheduled Item Maintenance, using Item Lists, and Mass Change Item/Location Attributes.   |
| Maintain Items Priv                   | A privilege for creating and editing Items, including Item Zone Retail, Item Seasons, Item Attributes, Item Timelines, Item UDAs, Item VAT, Images, Item Differentiators, Item Children, Mass Change Item Attributes, Simple Pack Setup, Pack Details, Item Approval Errors, Ticketing, Orders by Item, Item Transformation, Item Countries, Item Expenses and putting items back to Worksheet status. |
| Submit Items Priv                     | A privilege for submitting items.  |
| View Item Suppliers Priv              | A privilege for viewing item supplier relationships and sourcing information including Item Supplier Country of Manufacture, Item Supplier Country List, Item Supplier UOM, Item Supplier Country of Sourcing, Item Supplier Country Dimensions, Item Bracket Costing, Item Expenses, Item Supplier Country Locations and the Lead Time Days dashboard report.   |
| View Price Change History Priv        | A privilege for viewing price change history information through the Price Change History screen.  |
| Maintain Ticket Requests Priv         | A privilege for creating ticket printing requests through the Ticket Request screen.   |
| View Stores Priv                      | A privilege for viewing Stores, including<br>Addresses, CFAS, Store Location Traits and Walk<br>Through Stores.  |
| View Warehouses Priv                  | A privilege for viewing Physical and Virtual Warehouses, including Warehouse Department Parameters, Addresses and CFAS.  |
| Search Location Lists Priv            | A privilege for searching for Location Lists.  |
| View Location Lists Priv              | A privilege for viewing Location Lists, including Location List Criteria and Location List Details.  |
| Maintain Location Lists Priv          | A privilege for creating and editing Location<br>Lists, including Location List Criteria and<br>Location List Details.   |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Maintain Stores Priv                            | A privilege for creating and editing Stores, including Addresses, CFAS, Store Location Traits and Walk Through Stores.   |
| Maintain Warehouses Priv                        | A privilege for creating and editing Physical and<br>Virtual Warehouses, including Warehouse<br>Department Parameters, Addresses and CFAS.   |
| View Supply Chain Network Priv                  | A privilege for viewing Supply Chain Network information including Priority Groups, Location Activity Schedules, Warehouse Department Parameters, Transit Times, and Supplier and Location Delivery Schedules.   |
| Maintain Supply Chain Network Priv              | A privilege for creating and editing Supply<br>Chain Network information including Priority<br>Groups, Location Activity Schedules, Warehouse<br>Department Parameters, Transit Times, and<br>Supplier and Location Delivery Schedules.  |
| Search Merchandise Hierarchy Priv               | A privilege for searching for Pending<br>Merchandise Hierarchy changes.  |
| View Classes Priv                               | A privilege for viewing Classes, including CFAS.   |
| View Departments Priv                           | A privilege for viewing Departments, including CFAS.   |
| View Divisions Priv                             | A privilege for viewing Divisions.   |
| View Groups Priv                                | A privilege for viewing Groups.  |
| View Merchandise Hierarchy Defaults<br>Priv     | A privilege for viewing Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Defaults and UDA Defaults for departments,<br>classes, and subclasses.  |
| View Merchandise Hierarchy Priv                 | The View Merchandise Hierarchy Priv provides ability to access the Pending Merchandise Hierarchy changes and to the Merchandise Hierarchy screen to view all levels of the merchandise hierarchy. In order to access further details of entities at each level of the hierarchy, the view privileges specific to each entity are used. |
| View Subclasses Priv                            | A privilege for viewing Subclasses, including CFAS.  |
| Maintain Classes Priv                           | A privilege for creating and editing Classes, including CFAS.  |
| Maintain Departments Priv                       | A privilege for creating and editing<br>Departments, including CFAS. Also provides<br>access to update budget information from the<br>Cumulative Markon Variance dashboard report.   |
| Maintain Divisions Priv                         | A privilege for creating and editing Divisions.  |
| Maintain Groups Priv                            | A privilege for creating and editing Groups.   |
| Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy Defaults<br>Priv | A privilege for creating and editing Merchandise<br>Hierarchy Defaults and UDA Defaults for<br>departments, classes, and subclasses.   |
| Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy Priv             | A privilege for editing Pending Merchandise<br>Hierarchy changes.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name   | Description   |
|--|---|
| Maintain Reclassifications Priv              | A privilege for maintaining merchandise hierarchy relationships.  |
| Maintain Subclasses Priv                     | A privilege for creating and editing Subclasses, including CFAS.  |
| View Areas Priv                              | A privilege for viewing Areas.  |
| View Chains Priv                             | A privilege for viewing Chains.   |
| View Districts Priv                          | A privilege for viewing Districts.  |
| View Organizational Hierarchy Priv           | A privilege for viewing the Organization Hierarchy.   |
| View Regions Priv                            | A privilege for viewing Regions.  |
| Maintain Areas Priv                          | A privilege for creating and editing Areas.   |
| Maintain Chains Priv                         | A privilege for creating and editing Chains   |
| Maintain Districts Priv                      | A privilege for creating and editing Districts.   |
| Maintain Regions Priv                        | A privilege for creating and editing Regions.   |
| Maintain DSD Orders Priv                     | A privilege for creating Direct to Store Delivery (DSD) orders.   |
| Maintain Pre-Issued Order Numbers Priv       | A privilege for creating pre-issued order numbers and creating order using pre-issued numbers.  |
| Approve Purchase Orders Priv                 | A privilege for approving purchase orders and viewing the Orders Pending Approval dashboard report  |
| Search Purchase Orders Priv                  | A privilege for searching for purchase orders.  |
| View Purchase Orders Priv                    | A privilege for viewing purchase orders and viewing the Past Not After Date, Orders to Close, Never Approved, Once Approved, Missing Orders Data, Items Missing Data and Open Orders dashboard reports. |
| Close Purchase Orders Priv                   | A privilege for closing purchase orders.  |
| Maintain Purchase Orders Priv                | A privilege for creating and maintaining purchase orders.   |
| Submit Purchase Orders Priv                  | A privilege for submitting purchase orders.   |
| Maintain Receipt Adjustments by Cost<br>Priv | A privilege for adjusting receipts by cost and viewing transaction data.  |
| View Coupons Priv                            | A privilege for viewing coupons.  |
| View Product Restrictions Priv               | A privilege for viewing product restrictions.   |
| Maintain Coupons Priv                        | A privilege for creating and maintaining coupons.   |
| Maintain Product Restrictions Priv           | A privilege for creating and maintaining production restrictions.   |
| View Replenishment Attributes Priv           | A privilege for viewing replenishment attributes.   |
| Maintain Replenishment Attributes Priv       | . privilege for creating and maintaining replenishment attributes.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                       | Description  |
|--|--|
| View Required Documents Priv               | .A privilege for viewing the association of<br>Required Documents with Suppliers, Partners,<br>HTS Headings/Chapters, Countries, Letters of<br>Credit, Letter of Credit Amendments, Items,<br>Orders, and Order Items. |
| Maintain Required Documents Priv           | A privilege for creating and editing the association of Required Documents with Suppliers, Partners, HTS Headings/Chapters, Countries, Letters of Credit, Letter of Credit Amendments, Items, Orders, and Order Items. |
| View Stock Count Units Priv                | A privilege for viewing stock count results and viewing the Stock Count Unit Variance dashboard report.  |
| View Stock Counts Priv                     | A privielge for viewing stock count requests and viewing the Stock Counts Missing dashboard report.  |
| Maintain Stock Count Units Priv            | A privilege for maintaining stock count results, unit variance and adjustments, and virtual warehouse distribution.  |
| Maintain Stock Counts Priv                 | A privilege for creating and maintaining stock count requests.   |
| Maintain Stock Count Values Priv           | A privilege for maintaining stock count value variance and adjustments.  |
| View Stock Ledger Priv                     | A privilege for viewing the stock ledger and viewing the Cumulative Markon Variance and Shrinkage Variance dashboard reports.  |
| Maintain Stock Ledger Priv                 | A privilege for maintaining the stock ledger.  |
| Activate Partners Priv                     | A privilege for activating a Partner.  |
| Deactivate Partners Priv                   | A privilege for deactivating a Partner.  |
| Search Partners Priv                       | A privilege for searching for Partners.  |
| View Partners Priv                         | A privilege for viewing Partners including<br>Partner Address and Invoice Matching<br>Attributes.  |
| Maintain Partners Priv                     | A privilege for creating and editing Partners including Partner Address, Invoice Matching Attributes and CFAS via the Address screen.  |
| Activate Suppliers Priv                    | A privilege for activating a supplier.   |
| Deactivate Suppliers Priv                  | A privilege for deactivating a supplier.   |
| Search Suppliers Priv                      | A privilege for searching for Suppliers.   |
| View Suppliers Priv                        | A privilege for viewing Suppliers, including Supplier Address, EDI, Returns, Traits, Import Attributes, Invoice Matching Attributes, Importer/Exporter, Routing Location, CFAS, and Org Unit information.              |
| View Supplier Inventory Management<br>Priv | A privilege for creating and editing Supplier<br>Inventory Management information including<br>Supplier Brackets.  |

Table 11–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name   | Description  |
|--|--|
| Maintain Supplier Inventory Management<br>Priv | A privilege for creating and editing Supplier Inventory Management information including Supplier Brackets.  |
| Maintain Suppliers Priv                        | A privilege for creating and editing Suppliers, including Supplier Address, EDI, Returns, Traits, Import Attributes, Invoice Matching Attributes, Importer/Exporter, Routing Location, CFAS, and Org Unit information. |
| View VAT Priv                                  | A privilege for viewing the association of VAT information with Departments and Items.   |
| Maintain VAT Priv                              | A privilege for creating and editing the association of VAT information with Departments and Items.  |

Table 11–2 Duties

| Duty  | Description   | List of Privileges   |
|---|---|--|
| Application Admin<br>Inquiry Duty                         | A duty for viewing application administrative information including system options.   | View Application Administration<br>Priv  |
| Application Admin<br>Management Duty                      | A duty for maintaining application administration information, including system options. This duty is an extension of the Application Admin Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges in the Application<br>Admin Inquiry Duty<br>Maintain Application<br>Administration Priv |
| Asynchronous Job<br>Inquiry Duty                          | A duty for viewing the asynchronous job log.  | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv  |
| Asynchronous Job<br>Management Duty                       | A duty for managing<br>asynchronous jobs. This duty is<br>an extension of the Application<br>Admin Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges included in the<br>Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty.<br>Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv    |
| Data Security Inquiry<br>Duty                             | A duty for viewing data security definitions.   | View Data Security Priv  |
| Data Security<br>Management Duty                          | A duty for maintaining data security definitions. This duty is an extension of the Data Security Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges included in the<br>Data Security Inquiry Duty.<br>Maintain Data Security Priv           |
| Foundation Data<br>through Spreadsheet<br>Inquiry Duty    | A duty for viewing supporting data for Inventory, Price and Cost, and Items via downloaded spreadsheets.  | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv   |
| Foundation Data<br>through Spreadsheet<br>Management Duty | A duty tfor maintaining supporting data for Inventory, Price and Cost, and Items via spreadsheet downloads and uploads. This duty is an extension of the Foundation Data via Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty | All privileges included in the Foundation Data Admin Inquiry Duty.                                     |
|   |   | Maintain Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv   |
| Custom Flex<br>Attributes Inquiry<br>Duty                 | A duty for viewing custom flex attribute (CFAS) definitions   | View Custom Flex Attributes Priv   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty   | Description  | List of Privileges   |
|--|--|--|
| Custom Flex<br>Attributes<br>Management Duty       | A duty for maintaining custom<br>flex attribute (CFAS) definitions.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Custom Flex Attributes Inquiry<br>Duty.         | All privileges included in the<br>Custom Flex Attributes Inquiry<br>Duty.      |
|  |  | Maintain Custom Flex Attributes<br>Priv  |
| Report Options<br>Inquiry Duty                     | A duty for viewing dashboard and contextual BI report configuration options.   | View Report Options Priv   |
| Report Options<br>Management Duty                  | A duty for maintaining<br>dashboard and contextual BI<br>report configuration options.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Report Options Inquiry Duty. | All privileges included in the<br>Report Options Inquiry Duty                  |
|  |  | Maintain Report Options Priv   |
| Centralized Data<br>Translation Inquiry<br>Duty    | A duty for viewing data translations via a centralized online screen.  | View Translations Priv   |
| Centralized Data<br>Translation<br>Management Duty | A duty for maintaining data<br>translations via a centralized<br>online screen. This duty is an  | All privileges included in the<br>Centralized Data Translation<br>Inquiry Duty |
|  | extension of the Centralized<br>Data Translation Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Translations Priv   |
| Competitor Inquiry<br>Duty                         | A duty for viewing competitive shop requests and competitive price history.  | View Competitive Shop Priv   |
| Competitor<br>Management Duty                      | A duty for maintaining competitive shop requests. This duty is an extension of the Competitive Shop Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges included in the Competitor Inquiry Duty.                        |
|  |  | Maintain Competitive Shop Priv   |
| Contract Inquiry Duty                              | A duty for searching for and viewing Contracts.  | Search Contracts Priv  |
|  | viewing Contracts.   | View Contracts Priv  |
| Contract Management<br>Duty                        | A duty for maintaining and submitting contracts. This duty is an extension of the Contract Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges included in the Contract Inquiry Duty.                          |
|  |  | Maintain Contracts Priv  |
|  |  | Submit Contracts Priv  |
| Contract Approval<br>Duty                          | A duty for approving contracts.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Contract Management Duty.   | All privileges included in the Contract Management Duty.                       |
|  |  | Approve Contracts Priv   |
| Cost Change Inquiry<br>Duty                        | A duty for viewing item cost changes.  | View Cost Changes Priv   |
| Cost Change<br>Management Duty                     | A duty for maintaining and submitting item cost changes. This duty is an extension of the Cost Change Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges included in the Cost Change Inquiry Duty.                       |
|  |  | Maintain Cost Changes Priv   |
|  |  | Submit Cost Changes Priv   |
| Cost Change<br>Approval Duty                       | A duty for approving item cost changes. This duty is an extension of the Cost Change Management Duty.  | All privileges included in the Cost<br>Change Management Duty.                 |
|  |  | Approve Cost Changes Priv  |
| Cost Zone Inquiry<br>Duty                          | A duty for viewing cost zones.   | View Cost Zones Priv   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty  | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|---|--|---|
| Cost Zone<br>Management Duty  | A duty for maintaining cost zones. This duty is an extension   | All privileges included in the Cost Zone Inquiry Duty.                    |
|   | of the Cost Zone Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Cost Zones Priv  |
| Deal Inquiry Duty   | A duty for searching for and viewing deals.  | Search Deals Priv   |
|   |  | View Deals Priv   |
| Deal Management<br>Duty   | A duty for maintaining and submitting deals. This duty is an extension of the Deal Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges included in the Deal Inquiry Duty.                         |
|   |  | Maintain Deals Priv   |
|   |  | Submit Deals Priv   |
| Deal Approval Duty  | A duty for approving deals. This duty is an extension of the Deal  | All privileges included in the Deal<br>Management Duty.                   |
|   | Management Duty.   | Approve Deals Priv  |
| Expense Inquiry Duty  | A duty for viewing expense profiles used to build up an item's ELC.  | View Expense Profiles Priv  |
| Expense Management<br>Duty  | A duty for maintaining expense profiles used to build up an item's ELC. This duty is an extension of the Expense Inquiry Duty.               | All privileges included in the Expense Inquiry Duty.                      |
|   |  | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv  |
| Up Charge Inquiry<br>Duty   | A duty for viewing department up charges.  | View Up Charges Priv  |
| Up Charge<br>Management Duty  | A duty for maintaining department up charges. This duty is an extension of the Up Charge Inquiry Duty.                                       | All privileges included in the Up<br>Charge Inquiry Duty.                 |
|   |  | Maintain Up Charges Priv  |
| Average Cost<br>Management Duty   | A duty for maintaining average cost values.  | Maintain Average Cost Priv  |
| GL Drill Back Inquiry<br>Duty   | A duty for viewing general ledger drill back.  | View GL Drill Back Priv   |
| Tran Data Inquiry<br>Duty   | A duty for viewing transaction data.   | View Transaction Data Priv  |
| Franchise Cost Inquiry<br>Duty  | A duty for viewing franchise cost information.   | View Franchise Cost Priv  |
| Franchise Cost Management Duty A duty for maintaining franchise cost. This duty is an extension of the Franchise Cost Inquiry Duty. | All privileges included in the Franchise Cost Inquiry Duty.  |   |
|   | the Franchise Cost Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Franchise Cost Priv  |
| Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Inquiry Duty  | A duty for viewing franchise orders and returns.   | View Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv                                 |
| Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Management<br>Duty  | A duty for maintaining franchise<br>orders and returns. This duty is<br>an extension of the Franchise<br>Orders and Returns Inquiry<br>Duty. | All privileges included in the Franchise Orders and Returns Inquiry Duty. |
|   |  | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv                             |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty   | Description  | List of Privileges   |
|--|--|--|
| Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Approval<br>Duty | A duty for approving franchise<br>orders and returns. This is an<br>extension of the Franchise<br>Orders and Returns<br>Management Duty. | All privileges included in the Franchise Orders and Returns Management Duty. |
|  |  | Approve Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv                                 |
| ALC Inquiry Duty                                 | A duty for searching for and viewing actual landed cost (ALC).   | Search Actual Landed Cost Priv   |
|  |  | View Actual Landed Cost Priv   |
| Duty land<br>an e                                | A duty for finalizing actual   | Search Customs Entries Priv  |
|  | landed cost (ALC). This duty is<br>an extension of the ALC Inquiry<br>Duty.  | View Customs Entries Priv  |
| Customs Entry                                    | A duty for searching for and   | Search Customs Entries Priv  |
| Inquiry Duty                                     | viewing customs entries.   | View Customs Entries Priv  |
| Customs Entry<br>Management Duty                 | A duty for maintaining and submitting customs entries. This  | All privileges included in the Customs Entry Inquiry Duty.                   |
|  | is an extension of the Customs<br>Entry Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Customs Entries Priv  |
|  | ,,,,,,   | Submit Customs Entries Priv  |
| Customs Entry<br>Confirmation Duty               | A duty for confirming customs entries. This is an extension of the Customs Entry Management Duty.  | All privileges included in the Customs Entry Management Duty.                |
|  |  | Confirm Customs Entries Priv   |
| Import Item Inquiry Duty                         | A duty for viewing item data related to imports.   | View Import Items Priv   |
| Import Item                                      | A duty for maintaining item data related to imports. This is an extension of the Import Item Inquiry Duty.                               | All privileges included in the   |
| Management Duty                                  |  | Import Item Management Duty.  Maintain Import Items Priv                     |
| Letter of Credit                                 | A duty for searching for and viewing letters of credit.  | Search Letters of Credit Priv  |
| Inquiry Duty                                     |  | View Letters of Credit Priv  |
| Letter of Credit<br>Management Duty              | A duty for maintaining and submitting letters of credit. This is an extension of the Letter of Credit Inquiry Duty.                      | All privileges included in the Letter of Credit Inquiry Duty.                |
|  |  | Maintain Letters of Credit Priv  |
|  |  | Submit Letters of Credit Priv  |
| Letter of Credit<br>Approval Duty                | A duty for approving and confirming letters of credit. This is an extension of the Letter of Credit Management Duty.                     | All privileges included in the<br>Letter of Credit Management<br>Duty.       |
|  |  | Approve Letters of Credit Priv   |
|  |  | Confirm Letters of Credit Priv   |
| Obligation Inquiry                               | A duty for searching for and viewing obligations.  | Search Obligations Priv  |
| Duty   |  | View Obligations Priv  |
| Obligation<br>Management Duty                    | A duty for maintaining obligations. This is an extension of the Obligation Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges included in the Obligation Inquiry Duty.                      |
|  |  | Maintain Obligations Priv  |
|  |  |  |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                     | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|--|--|---|
| Obligation Approval<br>Duty              | A duty for approving obligations. This is an extension   | All privileges included in the Obligation Management Duty.            |
|  | of the Obligation Management Duty.   | Approve Obligations Priv  |
| Transportation Inquiry<br>Duty           | A duty for searching for and viewing transportation information.   | Search Transportation Priv  |
|  |  | View Transportation Priv  |
| Transportation<br>Management Duty        | A duty for maintaining transportation information. This duty is an extension of the Transportation Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges included in the Transportation Inquiry Duty.           |
|  |  | Maintain Transportation Priv  |
|  |  | Finalize Transportation Priv  |
| Transfer Approval<br>Duty                | A duty for approving transfers. This duty is an extension of the   | All privileges included in the Transfer Management Duty.              |
|  | Transfer Management Duty.  | Approve Transfers Priv  |
| Transfer with<br>Finishing               | nishing with finishing. This duty is an  | All privileges included in the Transfer Management Duty.              |
| Management Duty                          | extension of the Transfer<br>Management Duty.  | Maintain Transfers with Finishing Priv                                |
| Intercompany Transfer<br>Inquiry Duty    | A duty for viewing intercompany transfers. This is an extension of the Transfer Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges included in the Transfer Inquiry Duty.                 |
|  |  | View Intercompany Transfers Priv                                      |
| Intercompany Transfer<br>Management Duty | A duty for maintaining and submitting intercompany transfers. This is an extension of the Transfer Management Duty and the Intercompany Transfer Inquiry Duty. | All privileges included in the Transfer Management Duty.              |
|  |  | All privileges included in the Intercompany Transfer Inquiry Duty.    |
|  |  | Maintain Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                               |
|  |  | Submit Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                                 |
| Intercompany Transfer<br>Approval Duty   | A duty for approving intercompany transfers. This is an extension of the Transfer Management Duty and the Intercompany Transfer Management Duty.               | All privileges included in the Transfer Approval Duty.                |
|  |  | All privileges included in the Intercompany Transfer Management Duty. |
|  |  | Approve Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                                |
| MRT Inquiry Duty                         | A duty for searching for and   | Search MRTs Priv  |
| 1 ,                                      | viewing mass return transfers (MRTs).  | View MRTs Priv  |
| MRT Management<br>Duty                   | A duty for maintaining and submitting mass return transfers (MRTs). This duty is an extension of the MRT Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges included in the MRT Inquiry Duty.                      |
|  |  | Maintain MRTs Priv  |
|  |  | Submit MRTs Priv  |
| MRT Approval Duty                        | A duty for the approval of mass return transfers (MRTs). This duty is an extension of the MRT Management Duty.   | All privileges included in the MRT Management Duty.                   |
|  |  | Approve MRTs Priv   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

|   |   | List of Privileges   |
|---|---|--|
| RTV Inquiry Duty                            | A duty for searching for and  | Search RTVs Priv   |
|   | viewing returns to vendors (RTVs).  | View RTVs Priv   |
| RTV Management<br>Duty                      | A duty for maintaining returns to vendors (RTVs). This duty is  | All privileges included in the RTV Inquiry Duty.                   |
|   | an extension of the RTV Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain RTVs Priv   |
| RTV Approval Duty                           | A duty for approving returns to vendors (RTVs). This duty is an   | All privileges included in the RTV Management Duty.                |
|   | extension of the RTV<br>Management Duty.  | Approve RTVs Priv  |
| Shipment and<br>Receipts Inquiry Duty       | A duty for viewing shipments and receipts.  | View Shipments and Receipts Priv                                   |
| Shipment and<br>Receipts Management<br>Duty | A duty for maintaining shipments and receipts. This is an extension of the Shipment                                   | All privileges included in the Shipment and Receipts Inquiry Duty. |
|   | and Receipts Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Shipments and Receipts<br>Priv                            |
| Diff Inquiry Duty                           | A duty for viewing differentiators.   | View Diffs Priv  |
| Diff Management<br>Duty                     | A duty for maintaining differentiators. This duty is an extension of the Diff Inquiry Duty.                           | All privileges included in Diff Inquiry Duty.                      |
| ·   |   | Maintain Diffs Priv  |
| Diff Ratio Inquiry                          | A duty for searching for and viewing differentiator ratios.   | Search Diff Ratios Priv  |
| Duty  |   | View Diff Ratios Priv  |
| Diff Ratio<br>Management Duty               | A duty for maintaining differentiator ratios. This duty is an extension of the Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty.               | All privileges included in the Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty.            |
|   |   | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv  |
| Grocery Attribute<br>Management Duty        | A duty for viewing and maintaining grocery item related attributes.   | Maintain/View Grocery<br>Attributes Priv                           |
| Item Inquiry Duty                           | A duty for searching for and  | Search Items Priv  |
|   | viewing items.  | View Items Priv  |
| Item Management<br>Duty                     | A duty for maintaining and submitting items. This duty is an  | All privileges included in the Item Inquiry Duty.                  |
|   | extension of the Item Inquiry<br>Duty.  | Maintain Items Priv  |
|   | z uvj.  | Submit Items Priv  |
| Item Approval Duty                          | al Duty A duty for approving items. This All privileges included in duty is an extension of the Item Management Duty. | All privileges included in the Item Management Duty.               |
|   | Management Duty.  | Approve Items Priv   |
| Item List Inquiry Duty                      |   | Search Item Lists Priv   |
|   | viewing item lists.   | View Item Lists Priv   |
| Item List Management<br>Duty                | A duty for maintaining item lists. This duty is an extension of   | All privileges included in the Item List Inquiry Duty.             |
|   | the Item List Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Item Lists Priv   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                       | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|--|--|---|
| Item Supplier Inquiry<br>Duty              | A duty for viewing item supplier sourcing information.                                 | All privileges included in the Item Inquiry Duty.                       |
|  | This is an extension of the Item Inquiry Duty.   | View Item Suppliers Priv  |
| Item Supplier<br>Management Duty           | A duty for maintaining item supplier sourcing information.                             | All privileges included in the Item Supplier Inquiry Duty.              |
|  | This duty is an extension of the Item Supplier Inquiry Duty and the Item Inquiry Duty. | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv  |
| Item Location Inquiry<br>Duty              | A duty for viewing item location information. This is an extension                     | All privileges included in the Item Inquiry Duty.                       |
|  | of the Item Inquiry Duty.  | View Item Locations Priv  |
| Item Location<br>Management Duty           | A duty for maintaining item location information. This duty                            | All privileges included in the Item Location Inquiry Duty.              |
|  | is an extension of the Item<br>Location Inquiry Duty and the<br>Item Inquiry Duty.     | Maintain Item Locations Priv  |
| Price Change Inquiry<br>Duty               | A duty for viewing price change history.   | View Price Change History Priv  |
| Ticket Management<br>Duty                  | A duty for maintaining ticket requests.  | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv   |
| Location Inquiry Duty                      | A duty for searching for and viewing stores and warehouses.                            | View Organizational Hierarchy<br>Priv                                   |
|  |  | View Stores Priv  |
|  |  | View Warehouses Priv  |
| Location Management<br>Duty                | and warehouses. This duty is an  | All privileges included in the Location Inquiry Duty.                   |
|  | extension of the Location<br>Inquiry and Organizational                                | Maintain Stores Priv  |
|  | Hierarchy Inquiry Duties.  | Maintain Warehouses Priv  |
| Location List Inquiry                      | A duty for searching for and   | Search Location Lists Priv  |
| Duty                                       | viewing location lists.  | View Location Lists Priv  |
| Location List<br>Management Duty           | A duty for maintaining location lists. This duty is an extension of                    | All privileges included in the Location List Inquiry Duty.              |
|  | the Location List Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Location Lists Priv  |
| Supply Chain<br>Network Inquiry Duty       | A duty for viewing supplier chain network information.                                 | View Supply Chain Network Priv  |
| Supply Chain<br>Network Management<br>Duty | duty is an extension of the  | All privileges included in the<br>Supply Chain Network Inquiry<br>Duty. |
|  | Supply Chain Network Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Supply Chain Network<br>Priv                                   |
|  |  |   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty   | Description   | List of Privileges   |
|--|---|--|
| Merchandise<br>Hierarchy Inquiry<br>Duty       | A duty for searching for and viewing the merchandise  | Search Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv                                     |
|  | hierarchy, viewing defaults defined at various levels of the  | View Merchandise Hierarchy Priv  |
|  | merchandise hierarchy, viewing  | View Divisions Priv  |
|  | pending merchandise hierarchy changes. This also includes   | View Groups Priv   |
|  | viewing all grouping levels of  | View Departments Priv  |
|  | the hierarchy, Division, Group,<br>Department, Class, and   | View Classes Priv  |
|  | Subclass, and viewing   | View Subclasses Priv   |
|  | department level up charges and VAT information.  | View Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Defaults Priv                              |
|  |   | View Up Charges Priv   |
|  |   | View VAT Priv  |
| Merchandise<br>Hierarchy<br>Management Duty    | A duty for creating and maintaining the grouping levels of the merchandise hierarchy,   | All privileges included in the<br>Merchandise Hierarchy Inquiry<br>Duty. |
|  | creating and maintaining<br>defaults at various levels of the<br>hierarchy, creating and  | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv                                   |
|  | maintaining item  | Maintain Divisions Priv  |
|  | reclassifications and maintaining pending merchandise hierarchy   | Maintain Groups Priv   |
|  | changes. This also includes maintaining the details of all grouping levels of the hierarchy, Division, Group, Department, Class and Subclass, and maintaining department level up charges and VAT information. This duty is an extension of the Merchandise Hierarchy Inquiry Duty. | Maintain Departments Priv  |
|  |   | Maintain Classes Priv  |
|  |   | Maintain Subclasses Priv   |
|  |   | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Defaults Priv                          |
|  |   | Maintain Reclassifications Priv  |
|  |   | Maintain Up Charges Priv   |
|  |   | Maintain VAT Priv  |
| Organizational<br>Hierarchy Inquiry            | A duty for searching for and viewing the Organization Hierarchy. This also includes viewing all grouping levels of the hierarchy, Chain, Area, Region, and District.  | View Organizational Hierarchy<br>Priv                                    |
| Duty   |   | View Chains Priv   |
|  |   | View Areas Priv  |
|  |   | View Regions Priv  |
|  |   | View Districts Priv  |
| Organizational<br>Hierarchy<br>Management Duty | A duty for creating and maintaining the grouping levels of the Organization Hierarchy.  | All privileges included in the Organizational Hierarchy Inquiry Duty.    |
|  | This includes all grouping levels of the hierarchy, Chain, Area,  | Maintain Chains Priv   |
|  | Region, and District. This duty is  | Maintain Areas Priv  |
|  | an extension of the<br>Organizational Hierarchy<br>Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Regions Priv  |
|  |   | Maintain Districts Priv  |
| DSD Management<br>Duty                         | A duty for maintaining DSD purchase orders.   | Maintain DSD Orders Priv   |
| Pre-issued Order<br>Numbers<br>Management Duty | A duty for generating pre-issue order numbers and creating orders using pre-issued numbers.   | Maintain Pre-Issued Order<br>Numbers Priv                                |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty  | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|---|--|---|
| Purchase Order                                    | A duty for searching for and   | Search Purchase Orders Priv   |
| Inquiry Duty                                      | viewing purchase orders.   | View Purchase Orders Priv   |
| Purchase Order<br>Management Duty                 | A duty for maintaining and submitting purchase orders.   | All privileges included in the Purchase Order Inquiry Duty.                                     |
|   | This duty is an extension of the Purchase Order Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv   |
|   | r azerade erder myan y z aty.  | Submit Purchase Orders Priv   |
| Purchase Order<br>Approval Duty                   | A duty for approving purchase orders. This duty is an extension of the Purchase Order  | All privileges included in the<br>Purchase Order Management<br>Duty.                            |
|   | Management Duty.   | Approve Purchase Orders Priv  |
| Receipt Adjustments<br>by Cost Management<br>Duty | A duty for creating receipt adjustments by cost.   | Maintain Receipt Adjustments by<br>Cost Priv  |
| POS Configuration                                 | A duty for searching for and   | View Coupons Priv   |
| Inquiry Duty                                      | viewing coupons and product restrictions.  | View Product Restrictions Priv  |
| POS Configuration<br>Management Duty              | A duty for maintaining coupons and product restrictions. This  | All privileges included in the POS Configuration Inquiry Duty.                                  |
|   | duty is an extension of the POS Configuration Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Coupons Priv   |
|   | comganuter inquiry 2 wy.   | Maintain Product Restrictions<br>Priv   |
| Replenishment<br>Inquiry Duty                     | A duty for searching for and viewing replenishment attributes.   | View Replenishment Attributes<br>Priv   |
| Replenishment<br>Management Duty                  | A duty for maintaining replenishment attributes. This duty is an extension of the Replenishment Inquiry Duty.                              | All privileges included in the Replenishment Inquiry Duty.                                      |
|   |  | Maintain Replenishment<br>Attributes Priv   |
| Required Document<br>Inquiry Duty                 | A duty for viewing required documents.   | View Required Documents Priv  |
| Required Document<br>Management Duty              | nagement Duty documents. This duty is an Required Documents Inquiry Duty.  Documents Inquiry Duty  | All privileges included in the<br>Required Documents Inquiry<br>Duty.                           |
|   |  | Maintain Required Documents<br>Priv   |
| Stock Count Inquiry                               | A duty for searching for and   | View Stock Counts Priv  |
| Duty  | viewing stock count requests and stock count unit results.   | View Stock Count Units Priv   |
| Stock Count<br>Management Duty                    | A duty for maintaining stock count requests and stock count  | All privileges included in the Stock Count Inquiry Duty.  |
|   | unit results. This duty is an extension of the Stock Count   | Maintain Stock Counts Priv  |
|   | Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Stock Count Units Priv   |
| Stock Count Value<br>Management Duty              | A duty for maintaining stock<br>count value variances and<br>adjustments. This duty is an<br>extension of the Stock Count<br>Inquiry Duty. | All privileges included in the<br>Stock Count Inquiry Duty.<br>Maintain Stock Count Values Priv |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                  | Description   | List of Privileges  |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Stock Ledger Inquiry<br>Duty          | A duty for viewing the stock ledger.  | View Stock Ledger Priv  |
| Stock Ledger<br>Management Duty       | A duty for maintaining the stock ledger. This duty is an extension  | All privileges included in the Stock Ledger Inquiry Duty.       |
|                                       | of the Stock Ledger Inquiry<br>Duty.  | Maintain Stock Ledger Priv                                      |
| Buyer Dashboard<br>Inquiry Duty       | A duty for viewing the Buyer Dashboard.   | View Buyer Dashboard Priv                                       |
| Finance Analyst<br>Inquiry Duty       | A duty for viewing the Finance Analyst Dashboard.   | View Finance Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv                          |
| Inventory Analyst<br>Inquiry Duty     | A duty for viewing the Inventory Analyst Dashboard.   | View Inventory Analyst<br>Dashboard Priv                        |
| Inventory Control Inquiry Duty        | A duty for viewing the Inventory Control Dashboard.   | View Inventory Control<br>Dashboard Priv                        |
| Data Steward Inquiry<br>Duty          | A duty for viewing the Data Steward Dashboard.  | View Data Steward Dashboard<br>Priv                             |
| Partner Inquiry Duty                  | A duty for searching for and viewing partners.  | Search Partners Priv  |
|                                       | viewing partners.   | View Partners Priv  |
| Partner Management<br>Duty            | A duty for maintaining partners.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Partner Inquiry Duty.                         | All privileges included in the Partner Inquiry Duty.            |
|                                       |   | Maintain Partners Priv  |
| Partner Activation Duty               | A duty for activating or<br>deactivating a partner. This duty<br>is an extension of the Partner<br>Management Duty.   | All privileges included in the Partner Management Duty.         |
|                                       |   | Activate Partners Priv  |
|                                       |   | Deactivate Partners Priv  |
| Supplier Inquiry Duty                 |   | Search Suppliers Priv   |
|                                       | viewing suppliers and supplier sites.   | View Suppliers Priv   |
| Supplier Management<br>Duty           | suppliers and supplier sites. This  | All privileges included in the Supplier Inquiry Duty.           |
|                                       | duty is an extension of the Supplier Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Suppliers Priv   |
| Supplier Activation<br>Duty           | A duty for activating or<br>deactivating a supplier or<br>supplier site. This duty is an<br>extension of the Supplier | All privileges included in the Supplier Management Duty.        |
|                                       |   | Activate Suppliers Priv   |
|                                       | Management Duty.  | Deactivate Suppliers Priv                                       |
| Supplier Inventory<br>Inquiry Duty    | A duty for viewing supplier inventory information.  | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv                      |
| Supplier Inventory<br>Management Duty | A duty for maintaining supplier inventory information. This duty  | All privileges included in the Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty. |
|                                       | is an extension of the Supplier<br>Inventory Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv                  |
| VAT Inquiry Duty                      | A duty for viewing department VAT information.  | View VAT Priv   |
| VAT Management<br>Duty                | A duty for maintaining department VAT information.  | All privileges included in the VAT Inquiry Duty.                |
|                                       | This duty is an extension of the VAT Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain VAT Priv   |

Table 11–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                 | Description   | List of Privileges   |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Import Foundation<br>Inquiry Duty    | A duty for viewing supporting data for the import process via downloaded spreadsheets.  | View Import Foundation Priv  |
| Import Foundation<br>Management Duty | A duty for maintaining supporting data for the import process via spreadsheet downloads and uploads. This duty is an extension of the Import Foundation Inquiry Duty. | All privileges included in the<br>Import Foundation Inquiry Duty.<br>Maintain Import Foundation Priv |

Table 11–3 Function Security Mapping

| Table 11–3                              | Function                             | n Security Mapping  |  |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| Role                                    |                                      | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
| RMS/RTM<br>Application<br>Administrator | Application Admin Inquiry<br>Duty    | View Application Administration<br>Priv                               |  |
|   | Application Admin<br>Management Duty | Maintain Application<br>Administration Priv                           |  |
|   |                                      | Report Options Inquiry Duty   | Maintain Report Options Priv                     |
|   |                                      | Report Options Management   | View Translations Priv                           |
|   |                                      | Duty  | Maintain Translations Priv                       |
|   |                                      | Centralized Data Translation<br>Inquiry Duty                          | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                      |
|   |                                      | Centralized Data Translation  | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                  |
|   |                                      | Management Duty   | Maintain Custom Flex Attributes                  |
|   |                                      | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty   | Priv   |
|   |                                      | Asynchronous Job Management   | View Custom Flex Attributes Priv                 |
|   |                                      | Duty  | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv     |
|   |                                      | Custom Flex Attributes Management Duty Custom Flex Attributes Inquiry | Maintain Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv |
|   |                                      | Duty  | View Competitive Shop Priv                       |
|   |                                      | Foundation Data through   | Maintain Competitive Shop Priv                   |
|   |                                      | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty  | Approve Contracts Priv                           |
|   |                                      | Foundation Data through Spreadsheet Management Duty                   | Search Contracts Priv                            |
|   |                                      | Competitor Inquiry Duty   | View Contracts Priv                              |
|   |                                      | Competitor Management Duty  | Maintain Contracts Priv                          |
|   |                                      | Contract Approval Duty  | Submit Contracts Priv                            |
|   |                                      | Contract Inquiry Duty   | Approve Cost Changes Priv                        |
|   |                                      | Contract Management Duty  | View Cost Changes Priv                           |
|   |                                      | Cost Change Approval Duty   | Maintain Cost Changes Priv                       |
|   |                                      | Cost Change Inquiry Duty  | Submit Cost Changes Priv                         |
|   |                                      | Cost Change Management Duty   | View Cost Zones Priv                             |
|   |                                      | Cost Zone Inquiry Duty  | Maintain Cost Zones Priv                         |
|   |                                      | Cost Zone Management Duty   | View Buyer Dashboard Priv                        |
|   |                                      | Buyer Dashboard Inquiry Duty  | View Finance Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv           |
|   |                                      | Finance Analyst Inquiry Duty Inventory Analyst Inquiry Duty           | View Inventory Analyst<br>Dashboard Priv         |
|   |                                      | Inventory Control Inquiry Duty  | View Inventory Control<br>Dashboard Priv         |
|   |                                      | Data Steward Inquiry Duty Deal Approval Duty                          | View Data Steward Dashboard<br>Priv              |
|   |                                      | Deal Inquiry Duty   | Approve Deals Priv                               |
|   |                                      | Deal Management Duty  | Search Deals Priv                                |
|   |                                      | Expense Inquiry Duty  | View Deals Priv                                  |
|   |                                      | Expense Management Duty   | Maintain Deals Priv                              |
|   |                                      | Up Charge Inquiry Duty  | Submit Deals Priv                                |
|   |                                      | Up Charge Management Duty   | View Expense Profiles Priv                       |
|   |                                      | ·   | view Expense i formes i fiv                      |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty  | List of Privileges                            |
|------|---|---|
|      | Average Cost Management Duty                    | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv                |
|      | <b>Budgets Inquiry Duty</b>                     | View Up Charges Priv                          |
|      | <b>Budgets Management Duty</b>                  | Maintain Up Charges Priv                      |
|      | Finance Admin Inquiry Duty                      | Maintain Average Cost Priv                    |
|      | Finance Admin Management                        | View Budgets Priv                             |
|      | Duty  | Maintain Budgets Priv                         |
|      | Financial Control Inquiry Duty                  | View Finance Admin Priv                       |
|      | Financial Control Management Duty               | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                   |
|      | GL Drill Back Inquiry Duty                      | View Financial Control Priv                   |
|      | Tran Data Inquiry Duty                          | Maintain Financial Control Priv               |
|      | Franchise Cost Inquiry Duty                     | View GL Drill Back Priv                       |
|      | Franchise Cost Management                       | View Transaction Data Priv                    |
|      | Duty  | View Franchise Cost Priv                      |
|      | Franchise Foundation Inquiry                    | Maintain Franchise Cost Priv                  |
|      | Duty  | View Franchise Foundation Priv                |
|      | Franchise Foundation<br>Management Duty         | Maintain Franchise Foundation Priv            |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Approval Duty   | Approve Franchise Orders and Returns Priv     |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Inquiry Duty    | View Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv     |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Management Duty | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv |
|      | ALC Inquiry Duty                                | Search Actual Landed Cost Priv                |
|      | ALC Management Duty                             | View Actual Landed Cost Priv                  |
|      | Customs Entry Confirmation Duty                 | Finalize Actual Landed Cost Priv              |
|      | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                      | Confirm Customs Entries Priv                  |
|      | Customs Entry Management                        | Search Customs Entries Priv                   |
|      | Duty  | View Customs Entries Priv                     |
|      | Import Foundation Inquiry Duty                  | Maintain Customs Entries Priv                 |
|      | Import Foundation Management                    | Submit Customs Entries Priv                   |
|      | Duty  | View Import Foundation Priv                   |
|      | Import Item Inquiry Duty                        | Maintain Import Foundation Pri                |
|      | Import Item Management Duty                     | View Import Items Priv                        |
|      | Letter of Credit Approval Duty                  | Maintain Import Items Priv                    |
|      | Letter of Credit Inquiry Duty                   | Approve Letters of Credit Priv                |
|      | Letter of Credit Management<br>Duty             | Confirm Letters of Credit Priv                |
|      | Obligation Approval Duty                        | Search Letters of Credit Priv                 |
|      | Obligation Inquiry Duty                         | View Letters of Credit Priv                   |
|      | Obligation Management Duty                      | Maintain Letters of Credit Priv               |
|      | Transportation Inquiry Duty                     | Submit Letters of Credit Priv                 |
|      | Transportation Management                       | Approve Obligations Priv                      |
|      | Duty  | Search Obligations Priv                       |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| lole | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
|------|---|--|
|      | Inventory Adjustment                              | View Obligations Priv                            |
|      | Management Duty                                   | Maintain Obligations Priv                        |
|      | Inventory and Sales Inquiry                       | Search Transportation Priv                       |
|      | Duty Intercompany Transfer Approval               | View Transportation Priv                         |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Approval Duty               | Finalize Transportation Priv                     |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry                     | Maintain Transportation Priv                     |
|      | Duty Intercompany Transfer                        | Maintain Inventory Adjustments<br>Priv           |
|      | Management Duty<br>MRT Approval Duty              | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv            |
|      | MRT Inquiry Duty                                  | Approve Intercompany Transfers                   |
|      | MRT Management Duty                               | Priv   |
|      | RTV Approval Duty                                 | View Intercompany Transfers Priv                 |
|      | **  | Maintain Intercompany Transfers                  |
|      | RTV Inquiry Duty                                  | Priv   |
|      | RTV Management Duty Shipment and Receipts Inquiry | Submit Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv            |
|      | Duty  | Approve MRTs Priv                                |
|      | Shipment and Receipts<br>Management Duty          | Search MRTs Priv                                 |
|      | Transfer Approval Duty                            | View MRTs Priv                                   |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty                             | Maintain MRTs Priv                               |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND                         | Submit MRTs Priv                                 |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry                     | Approve RTVs Priv                                |
|      | Duty  | Search RTVs Priv                                 |
|      | Transfer Management Duty                          | View RTVs Priv                                   |
|      | Transfer with Finishing                           | Maintain RTVs Priv                               |
|      | Management Duty                                   | View Shipments and Receipts Private              |
|      | Diff Inquiry Duty                                 | Maintain Shipments and Receipts                  |
|      | Diff Management Duty                              | Priv   |
|      | Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty                           | Approve Transfers Priv                           |
|      | Diff Ratio Management Duty                        | View Transfers Priv                              |
|      | Grocery Attribute Management<br>Duty              | Search Transfers Priv                            |
|      | Item Approval Duty                                | Maintain Transfers Priv                          |
|      | Item Inquiry Duty                                 | Submit Transfers Priv                            |
|      | Item List Inquiry Duty                            | Maintain Transfers with Finishing Priv           |
|      | Item List Management Duty                         | View Diffs Priv                                  |
|      | ,   | Maintain Diffs Priv                              |
|      | Item Location Inquiry Duty                        |  |
|      | Item Location Management<br>Duty                  | Use Diffs Priv                                   |
|      | Item Management Duty                              | Search Diff Ratios Priv                          |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                        | View Diff Ratios Priv                            |
|      | Item Supplier Management Duty                     | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv  Maintain/View Grocery |
|      | Price Change Inquiry Duty                         | Attributes Priv Approve Items Priv               |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty   | List of Privileges                           |
|------|--|--|
|      | Ticket Management Duty                         | Search Items Priv                            |
|      | Location Inquiry Duty                          | View Items Priv                              |
|      | Location List Inquiry Duty                     | Search Item Lists Priv                       |
|      | Location List Management Duty                  | View Item Lists Priv                         |
|      | Location Management Duty                       | Maintain Item Lists Priv                     |
|      | Supply Chain Network Inquiry                   | View Item Locations Priv                     |
|      | Duty   | Maintain Item Locations Priv                 |
|      | Supply Chain Network<br>Management Duty        | Maintain Items Priv                          |
|      | Merchandise Hierarchy                          | Submit Items Priv                            |
|      | Management Duty                                | View Item Suppliers Priv                     |
|      | Organizational Hierarchy                       | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                 |
|      | Inquiry Duty                                   | View Price Change History Priv               |
|      | Organizational Hierarchy<br>Management Duty    | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv                |
|      | DSD Management Duty                            | View Stores Priv                             |
|      | Pre-issued Order Numbers                       | View Warehouses Priv                         |
|      | Management Duty                                | Search Location Lists Priv                   |
|      | Purchase Order Approval Duty                   | View Location Lists Priv                     |
|      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty                    | Maintain Location Lists Priv                 |
|      | Purchase Order Management                      | Maintain Stores Priv                         |
|      | Duty   | Maintain Warehouses Priv                     |
|      | Receipt Adjustments by Cost<br>Management Duty | View Supply Chain Network Priv               |
|      | POS Configuration Inquiry Duty                 | Maintain Supply Chain Network                |
|      | POS Configuration Management Duty              | Priv<br>Search Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv |
|      | Replenishment Inquiry Duty                     | View Classes Priv                            |
|      | Replenishment Management                       | View Departments Priv                        |
|      | Duty   | View Divisions Priv                          |
|      | Required Document Inquiry<br>Duty              | View Groups Priv                             |
|      | Required Document<br>Management Duty           | View Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Defaults Priv  |
|      | Stock Count Inquiry Duty                       | View Merchandise Hierarchy Priv              |
|      | Stock Count Management Duty                    | View Subclasses Priv                         |
|      | Stock Count Value Management                   | Maintain Classes Priv                        |
|      | Duty   | Maintain Departments Priv                    |
|      | Stock Ledger Inquiry Duty                      | Maintain Divisions Priv                      |
|      | Stock Ledger Management Duty                   | Maintain Groups Priv                         |
|      | Partner Activation Duty                        | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy               |
|      | Partner Inquiry Duty                           | Defaults Priv                                |
|      | Partner Management Duty                        | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv       |
|      | Supplier Activation Duty                       | Maintain Reclassifications Priv              |
|      | Supplier Inquiry Duty                          | Maintain Subclasses Priv                     |
|      | Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty                | ivianitani Subciasses FIIV                   |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty                                    | List of Privileges                        |
|------|---|---|
|      | Supplier Inventory Management           | View Areas Priv                           |
|      | Duty                                    | View Chains Priv                          |
|      | Supplier Management Duty                | View Districts Priv                       |
|      | VAT Inquiry Duty<br>VAT Management Duty | View Organizational Hierarchy<br>Priv     |
|      |   | View Regions Priv                         |
|      |   | Maintain Areas Priv                       |
|      |   | Maintain Chains Priv                      |
|      |   | Maintain Districts Priv                   |
|      |   | Maintain Regions Priv                     |
|      |   | Maintain DSD Orders Priv                  |
|      |   | Maintain Pre-Issued Order<br>Numbers Priv |
|      |   | Approve Purchase Orders Priv              |
|      |   | Search Purchase Orders Priv               |
|      |   | View Purchase Orders Priv                 |
|      |   | Close Purchase Orders Priv                |
|      |   | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv             |
|      |   | Submit Purchase Orders Priv               |
|      |   | Maintain Receipt Adjustments by Cost Priv |
|      |   | View Coupons Priv                         |
|      |   | View Product Restrictions Priv            |
|      |   | Maintain Coupons Priv                     |
|      |   | Maintain Product Restrictions<br>Priv     |
|      |   | View Replenishment Attributes<br>Priv     |
|      |   | Maintain Replenishment<br>Attributes Priv |
|      |   | View Required Documents Priv              |
|      |   | Maintain Required Documents<br>Priv       |
|      |   | View Stock Count Units Priv               |
|      |   | View Stock Counts Priv                    |
|      |   | Maintain Stock Count Units Priv           |
|      |   | Maintain Stock Counts Priv                |
|      |   | Maintain Stock Count Values Pri           |
|      |   | View Stock Ledger Priv                    |
|      |   | Maintain Stock Ledger Priv                |
|      |   | Activate Partners Priv                    |
|      |   | Deactivate Partners Priv                  |
|      |   | Search Partners Priv                      |
|      |   | View Partners Priv                        |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | List of Privileges                             |
|------|------|--|
|      |      | Maintain Partners Priv                         |
|      |      | Activate Suppliers Priv                        |
|      |      | Deactivate Suppliers Priv                      |
|      |      | Search Suppliers Priv                          |
|      |      | View Suppliers Priv                            |
|      |      | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv     |
|      |      | Maintain Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv |
|      |      | Maintain Suppliers Priv                        |
|      |      | View VAT Priv                                  |
|      |      | Maintain VAT Priv                              |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role         | Duty   | List of Privileges   |
|--------------|--|--|
| Data Steward | Application Admin Inquiry<br>Duty                      | View Application Administration<br>Priv                      |
|              | Report Options Inquiry Duty                            | Maintain Report Options Priv                                 |
|              | Report Options Management                              | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                                  |
|              | Duty   | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                              |
|              | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                          | View Foundation Data via                                     |
|              | Asynchronous Job Management Duty                       | Spreadsheet Priv  Maintain Foundation Data via               |
|              | Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty    | Spreadsheet Priv   |
|              | Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Management Duty | View Competitive Shop Priv<br>Maintain Competitive Shop Priv |
|              | Competitor Inquiry Duty                                | View Cost Changes Priv                                       |
|              | Competitor Management Duty                             | Maintain Cost Changes Priv                                   |
|              | Cost Change Inquiry Duty                               | Submit Cost Changes Priv                                     |
|              | Cost Change Management Duty                            | View Cost Zones Priv   |
|              | Cost Zone Inquiry Duty                                 | Maintain Cost Zones Priv                                     |
|              | Cost Zone Management Duty                              | View Data Steward Dashboard                                  |
|              | Data Steward Inquiry Duty                              | Priv   |
|              | Finance Admin Inquiry Duty                             | View Finance Admin Priv                                      |
|              | Finance Admin Management Duty                          | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                                  |
|              |  | View GL Drill Back Priv                                      |
|              | GL Drill Back Inquiry Duty                             | View Transaction Data Priv                                   |
|              | Tran Data Inquiry Duty                                 | View Franchise Foundation Priv                               |
|              | Franchise Foundation Inquiry<br>Duty                   | Maintain Franchise Foundation<br>Priv                        |
|              | Franchise Foundation<br>Management Duty                | View Import Foundation Priv                                  |
|              |  | Maintain Import Foundation Priv                              |
|              | Import Foundation Inquiry Duty                         | View Import Items Priv                                       |
|              | _ 1  | Maintain Import Items Priv                                   |
|              | Duty   | View Diffs Priv  |
|              | Import Item Inquiry Duty                               | Maintain Diffs Priv  |
|              | Import Item Management Duty                            | Use Diffs Priv   |
|              | Diff Inquiry Duty                                      | Search Diff Ratios Priv                                      |
|              | Diff Management Duty                                   | View Diff Ratios Priv  |
|              | Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty                                | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv                                    |
|              | Diff Ratio Management Duty                             | Maintain/View Grocery  |
|              | Grocery Attribute Management<br>Duty                   | Attributes Priv Approve Items Priv                           |
|              | Item Approval Duty                                     | Search Items Priv  |
|              | Item Inquiry Duty                                      | View Items Priv  |
|              | Item List Inquiry Duty                                 | Search Item Lists Priv                                       |
|              | Item List Management Duty                              | View Item Lists Priv   |
|              | Item Location Inquiry Duty                             | Maintain Item Lists Priv                                     |
|              | Item Location Management<br>Duty                       | View Item Locations Priv                                     |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty  | List of Privileges                              |
|------|---|---|
|      | Item Management Duty  | Maintain Item Locations Priv                    |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                                    | Maintain Items Priv                             |
|      | Item Supplier Management                                      | Submit Items Priv                               |
|      | Duty  | View Item Suppliers Priv                        |
|      | Price Change Inquiry Duty                                     | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                    |
|      | Ticket Management Duty  | View Price Change History Priv                  |
|      | Location Inquiry Duty   | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv                   |
|      | Location List Inquiry Duty                                    | View Stores Priv                                |
|      | Location List Management Duty                                 | View Warehouses Priv                            |
|      | Location Management Duty                                      | Search Location Lists Priv                      |
|      | Supply Chain Network Inquiry<br>Duty                          | View Location Lists Priv                        |
|      | Supply Chain Network  | Maintain Location Lists Priv                    |
|      | Management Duty   | Maintain Stores Priv                            |
|      | Merchandise Hierarchy Inquiry                                 | Maintain Warehouses Priv                        |
|      | Duty  | View Supply Chain Network Pri                   |
|      | Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Management Duty                      | Maintain Supply Chain Network<br>Priv           |
|      | Organizational Hierarchy<br>Management Duty                   | Search Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv            |
|      | POS Configuration Inquiry Duty                                | View Classes Priv                               |
|      | POS Configuration Management                                  | View Departments Priv                           |
|      | Duty  | View Divisions Priv                             |
|      | Partner Activation Duty                                       | View Groups Priv                                |
|      | Partner Inquiry Duty Partner Management Duty                  | View Merchandise Hierarchy                      |
|      | Supplier Activation Duty                                      | Defaults Priv                                   |
|      | Supplier Inquiry Duty   | View Merchandise Hierarchy Pri                  |
|      |   | View Subclasses Priv                            |
|      | Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty Supplier Inventory Management | Maintain Classes Priv                           |
|      | Duty  | Maintain Departments Priv                       |
|      | Supplier Management Duty                                      | Maintain Divisions Priv                         |
|      | VAT Inquiry Duty  | Maintain Groups Priv                            |
|      | VAT Management Duty   | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Defaults Priv |
|      |   | Maintain Merchandise Hierarchy<br>Priv          |
|      |   | Maintain Reclassifications Priv                 |
|      |   | Maintain Subclasses Priv                        |
|      |   | View Areas Priv                                 |
|      |   | View Chains Priv                                |
|      |   | View Districts Priv                             |
|      |   | View Organizational Hierarchy<br>Priv           |
|      |   | View Regions Priv                               |
|      |   | Maintain Areas Priv                             |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role  | Duty   | List of Privileges                               |
|-------|--|--|
|       |  | Maintain Chains Priv                             |
|       |  | Maintain Districts Priv                          |
|       |  | Maintain Regions Priv                            |
|       |  | View Coupons Priv                                |
|       |  | View Product Restrictions Priv                   |
|       |  | Maintain Coupons Priv                            |
|       |  | Maintain Product Restrictions<br>Priv            |
|       |  | Activate Partners Priv                           |
|       |  | Deactivate Partners Priv                         |
|       |  | Search Partners Priv                             |
|       |  | View Partners Priv                               |
|       |  | Maintain Partners Priv                           |
|       |  | Activate Suppliers Priv                          |
|       |  | Deactivate Suppliers Priv                        |
|       |  | Search Suppliers Priv                            |
|       |  | View Suppliers Priv                              |
|       |  | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv       |
|       |  | Maintain Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv   |
|       |  | Maintain Suppliers Priv                          |
|       |  | View VAT Priv                                    |
|       |  | Maintain VAT Priv                                |
| Buyer | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                  | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                      |
|       | Asynchronous Job Management                    | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                  |
|       | Duty<br>View Foundation Data via               | Maintain Custom Flex Attributes<br>Priv          |
|       | Spreadsheet Priv                               | View Custom Flex Attributes Priv                 |
|       | Competitor Inquiry Duty Contract Approval Duty | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv     |
|       | Contract Inquiry Duty Contract Management Duty | Maintain Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv |
|       | Cost Change Approval Duty                      | View Competitive Shop Priv                       |
|       | Cost Change Inquiry Duty                       | Maintain Competitive Shop Priv                   |
|       | Cost Change Management Duty                    | Approve Contracts Priv                           |
|       | Buyer Dashboard Inquiry Duty                   | Search Contracts Priv                            |
|       | Deal Approval Duty                             | View Contracts Priv                              |
|       | Deal Inquiry Duty                              | Maintain Contracts Priv                          |
|       | Deal Management Duty                           | Submit Contracts Priv                            |
|       | Budgets Inquiry Duty                           | Approve Cost Changes Priv                        |
|       | Budgets Management Duty                        | Search Cost Changes Priv                         |
|       |  | View Cost Changes Priv                           |
|       | GL Drill Back Inquiry Duty                     | Maintain Cost Changes Priv                       |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty  | List of Privileges                            |
|------|---|---|
|      | Tran Data Inquiry Duty                          | Submit Cost Changes Priv                      |
|      | Franchise Cost Inquiry Duty                     | View Buyer Dashboard Priv                     |
|      | Franchise Cost Management<br>Duty               | View Finance Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv        |
|      | Franchise Foundation Inquiry<br>Duty            | View Inventory Analyst<br>Dashboard Priv      |
|      | Franchise Foundation<br>Management Duty         | View Inventory Control<br>Dashboard Priv      |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Approval Duty   | View Data Steward Dashboard<br>Priv           |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Inquiry Duty    | Approve Deals Priv<br>Search Deals Priv       |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Management Duty | View Deals Priv                               |
|      | Import Foundation Inquiry Duty                  | Maintain Deals Priv                           |
|      | Import Foundation Management                    | Submit Deals Priv                             |
|      | Duty  | View Budgets Priv                             |
|      | RTV Inquiry Duty                                | Maintain Budgets Priv                         |
|      | Diff Management Duty                            | View Finance Admin Priv                       |
|      | Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty                         | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                   |
|      | Diff Ratio Management Duty                      | View Financial Control Priv                   |
|      | Grocery Attribute Management<br>Duty            | Maintain Financial Control Priv               |
|      | •   | View GL Drill Back Priv                       |
|      | Item Approval Duty                              | View Transaction Data Priv                    |
|      | Item Inquiry Duty                               | View Franchise Cost Priv                      |
|      | Item List Management Duty                       | Maintain Franchise Cost Priv                  |
|      | Item List Management Duty                       | View Franchise Foundation Priv                |
|      | Item Location Inquiry Duty                      | Maintain Franchise Foundation                 |
|      | Item Location Management Duty                   | Priv Approve Franchise Orders and             |
|      | Item Management Duty                            | Returns Priv                                  |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                      | View Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv     |
|      | Item Supplier Management Duty                   | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv |
|      | Price Change Inquiry Duty                       | View Import Foundation Priv                   |
|      | Location List Inquiry Duty                      | Maintain Import Foundation Priv               |
|      | Location List Management Duty                   | View Item Inventory and Sales                 |
|      | Pre-issued Order Numbers<br>Management Duty     | Priv Search RTVs Priv                         |
|      | Purchase Order Approval Duty                    | View RTVs Priv                                |
|      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty                     | Use Diffs Priv                                |
|      | Purchase Order Management<br>Duty               | Search Diff Ratios Priv                       |
|      |   | View Diff Ratios Priv                         |
|      |   | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv                     |
|      |   | Approve Items Priv                            |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | List of Privileges                        |
|------|------|---|
|      |      | Maintain/View Grocery<br>Attributes Priv  |
|      |      | Search Items Priv                         |
|      |      | View Items Priv                           |
|      |      | Search Item Lists Priv                    |
|      |      | View Item Lists Priv                      |
|      |      | Maintain Item Lists Priv                  |
|      |      | View Item Locations Priv                  |
|      |      | Maintain Item Locations Priv              |
|      |      | Maintain Items Priv                       |
|      |      | Submit Items Priv                         |
|      |      | View Item Suppliers Priv                  |
|      |      | View Price Change History Priv            |
|      |      | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv             |
|      |      | View Stores Priv                          |
|      |      | View Warehouses Priv                      |
|      |      | Search Location Lists Priv                |
|      |      | View Location Lists Priv                  |
|      |      | Maintain Location Lists Priv              |
|      |      | Maintain Pre-Issued Order<br>Numbers Priv |
|      |      | Approve Purchase Orders Priv              |
|      |      | Search Purchase Orders Priv               |
|      |      | View Purchase Orders Priv                 |
|      |      | Close Purchase Orders Priv                |
|      |      | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv             |
|      |      | Submit Purchase Orders Priv               |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role              | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
|-------------------|---|--|
| Inventory Analyst | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                           | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                      |
|                   | Asynchronous Job Management                             | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                  |
|                   | Duty<br>Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv     |
|                   |   | Search Contracts Priv                            |
|                   | Contract Inquiry Duty                                   | View Contracts Priv                              |
|                   | Contract Management Duty Inventory Analyst Inquiry Duty | Maintain Contracts Priv                          |
|                   |   | Submit Contracts PrivView                        |
|                   | Budgets Inquiry Duty                                    | Inventory Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv              |
|                   | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Approval Duty           | View Budgets Priv                                |
|                   | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Inquiry Duty            | Approve Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv     |
|                   | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Management Duty         | View Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv        |
|                   | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                              | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv    |
|                   | Transportation Inquiry Duty                             | Search Customs Entries Priv                      |
|                   | Inventory and Sales Inquiry<br>Duty                     | View Customs Entries Priv                        |
|                   | Intercompany Transfer Approval<br>Duty                  | Search Transportation Priv                       |
|                   |   | View Transportation Priv                         |
|                   | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty                   | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv            |
|                   | Intercompany Transfer<br>Management Duty                | Approve Intercompany Transfers                   |
|                   | MRT Approval Duty                                       | View Intercompany Transfers Priv                 |
|                   | MRT Inquiry Duty  | Maintain Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv          |
|                   | MRT Management Duty                                     |  |
|                   | RTV Approval Duty                                       | Submit Intercompany Transfers                    |
|                   | RTV Inquiry Duty  | Priv   |
|                   | RTV Management Duty                                     | Approve MRTs Priv                                |
|                   | Transfer Approval Duty                                  | Search MRTs Priv                                 |
|                   | Transfer Inquiry Duty                                   | View MRTs Priv                                   |
|                   | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND                               | Maintain MRTs Priv                               |
|                   | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty                   | Submit MRTs Priv                                 |
|                   | Transfer Management Duty                                | Approve RTVs Priv                                |
|                   | Transfer with Finishing                                 | Search RTVs Priv                                 |
|                   | Management Duty   | View RTVs Priv                                   |
|                   | Diff Management Duty                                    | Maintain RTVs Priv                               |
|                   | Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty                                 | Approve Transfers Priv                           |
|                   | Diff Ratio Management Duty                              | View Transfers Priv                              |
|                   | Grocery Attribute Management<br>Duty                    | Search Transfers Priv<br>Maintain Transfers Priv |
|                   | Item Approval Duty                                      | Submit Transfers Priv                            |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role             | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
|------------------|---|--|
|                  | Item Inquiry Duty                               | Maintain Transfers with Finishing                |
|                  | Item List Inquiry Duty                          | Priv   |
|                  | Item List Management Duty                       | Use Diffs Priv                                   |
|                  | Item Location Inquiry Duty                      | Search Diff Ratios Priv                          |
|                  | Item Location Management                        | View Diff Ratios Priv                            |
|                  | Duty  | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv                        |
|                  | Item Management Duty                            | Maintain/View Grocery<br>Attributes Priv         |
|                  | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                      | Approve Items Priv                               |
|                  | Item Supplier Management<br>Duty                | Search Items Priv                                |
|                  | Ticket Management Duty                          | View Items Priv                                  |
|                  | Location List Inquiry Duty                      | Search Item Lists Priv                           |
|                  | Location List Management Duty                   | View Item Lists Priv                             |
|                  | Pre-issued Order Numbers                        | Maintain Item Lists Priv                         |
|                  | Management Duty                                 | View Item Locations Priv                         |
|                  | Purchase Order Approval Duty                    | Maintain Item Locations Priv                     |
|                  | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty                     | Maintain Items Priv                              |
|                  | Purchase Order Management<br>Duty               | Submit Items Priv                                |
|                  | Replenishment Inquiry Duty                      | View Item Suppliers Priv                         |
|                  | Replenishment Management                        | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                     |
|                  | Duty  | View Price Change History Priv                   |
|                  |   | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv                    |
|                  |   | Search Location Lists Priv                       |
|                  |   | View Location Lists Priv                         |
|                  |   | Maintain Location Lists Priv                     |
|                  |   | Maintain Pre-Issued Order<br>Numbers Priv        |
|                  |   | Approve Purchase Orders Priv                     |
|                  |   | Search Purchase Orders Priv                      |
|                  |   | View Purchase Orders Priv                        |
|                  |   | Close Purchase Orders Priv                       |
|                  |   | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv                    |
|                  |   | Submit Purchase Orders Priv                      |
|                  |   | View Replenishment Attributes<br>Priv            |
|                  |   | Maintain Replenishment<br>Attributes Priv        |
| nventory Manager | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                   | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                      |
|                  | Asynchronous Job Management                     | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                  |
|                  | Duty Foundation Data via                        | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv     |
|                  | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty Contract Approval Duty | Maintain Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv |
|                  | Contract Inquiry Duty                           | Approve Contracts Priv                           |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
|------|---|--|
|      | Contract Management Duty                        | Search Contracts Priv                            |
|      | Inventory Analyst Inquiry Duty                  | View Contracts Priv                              |
|      | <b>Budgets Inquiry Duty</b>                     | Maintain Contracts Priv                          |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns                    | Submit Contracts Priv                            |
|      | Approval Duty Franchise Orders and Returns      | View Inventory Analyst<br>Dashboard Priv         |
|      | Inquiry Duty                                    | View Budgets Priv                                |
|      | Franchise Orders and Returns<br>Management Duty | Approve Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv     |
|      | ALC Inquiry Duty                                | View Franchise Orders and                        |
|      | ALC Inquiry Duty                                | Returns Priv                                     |
|      | ALC Management Duty Customs Entry Confirmation  | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv    |
|      | Duty  | Search Customs Entries Priv                      |
|      | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                      | View Customs Entries Priv                        |
|      | Transportation Inquiry Duty                     | Search Transportation Priv                       |
|      | Inventory and Sales Inquiry                     | View Transportation Priv                         |
|      | Duty<br>Intercompany Transfer Approval          | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv            |
|      | Duty<br>Intercompany Transfer Inquiry           | Approve Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv           |
|      | Duty  | View Intercompany Transfers Pri                  |
|      | Intercompany Transfer<br>Management Duty        | Maintain Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv          |
|      | MRT Approval Duty                               | Submit Intercompany Transfers                    |
|      | MRT Inquiry Duty                                | Priv   |
|      | MRT Management Duty                             | Approve MRTs Priv                                |
|      | RTV Approval Duty                               | Search MRTs Priv                                 |
|      | RTV Inquiry Duty                                | View MRTs Priv                                   |
|      | RTV Management Duty                             | Maintain MRTs Priv                               |
|      | Transfer Approval Duty                          | Submit MRTs Priv                                 |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty                           | Approve RTVs Priv                                |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND                       | Search RTVs Priv                                 |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty           | View RTVs Priv                                   |
|      | Transfer Management Duty                        | Maintain RTVs Priv                               |
|      | Transfer with Finishing<br>Management Duty      | Approve Transfers Priv View Transfers PrivSearch |
|      | Diff Management Duty                            | Transfers Priv                                   |
|      | Diff Ratio Inquiry Duty                         | Maintain Transfers Priv                          |
|      | Diff Ratio Management Duty                      | Submit Transfers Priv                            |
|      | Grocery Attribute Management<br>Duty            | Maintain Transfers with Finishing Priv           |
|      | Item Approval Duty                              | Use Diffs Priv                                   |
|      | Item Inquiry Duty                               | Search Diff Ratios Priv                          |
|      | nem inquiry Duty                                | View Diff Ratios Priv                            |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role                | Duty  | List of Privileges                           |
|---------------------|---|--|
|                     | Item List Inquiry Duty                                  | Maintain Diff Ratios Priv                    |
|                     | Item List Management Duty                               | Maintain/View Grocery                        |
|                     | Item Location Inquiry Duty                              | Attributes Priv                              |
|                     | Item Location Management                                | Approve Items Priv                           |
|                     | Duty  | Search Items Priv                            |
|                     | Item Management Duty                                    | View Items Priv                              |
|                     | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                              | Search Item Lists Priv                       |
|                     | Item Supplier Management<br>Duty                        | View Item Lists Priv                         |
|                     | Price Change Inquiry Duty                               | Maintain Item Lists Priv                     |
|                     | Ticket Management Duty                                  | View Item Locations Priv                     |
|                     | Location List Inquiry Duty                              | Maintain Item Locations Priv                 |
|                     | Location List Management Duty                           | Maintain Items Priv                          |
|                     | •   | Submit Items Priv                            |
|                     | Pre-issued Order Numbers<br>Management Duty             | View Item Suppliers Priv                     |
|                     | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty                             | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                 |
|                     | Purchase Order Management                               | View Price Change History Priv               |
|                     | Duty  | Maintain Ticket Requests Priv                |
|                     | Replenishment Inquiry Duty                              | Search Location Lists Priv                   |
|                     | Replenishment Management                                | View Location Lists Priv                     |
|                     | Duty  | Maintain Location Lists Priv                 |
|                     |   | Maintain Pre-Issued Order<br>Numbers Priv    |
|                     |   | Approve Purchase Orders Priv                 |
|                     |   | Search Purchase Orders Priv                  |
|                     |   | View Purchase Orders Priv                    |
|                     |   | Close Purchase Orders Priv                   |
|                     |   | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv                |
|                     |   | Submit Purchase Orders Priv                  |
|                     |   | View Replenishment Attributes<br>Priv        |
|                     |   | Maintain Replenishment<br>Attributes Priv    |
| Corporate Inventory | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                           | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                  |
| Control Analyst     | Asynchronous Job Management                             | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv              |
|                     | Duty<br>Foundation Data via                             | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv |
|                     | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty Inventory Control Inquiry Duty | View Inventory Control<br>Dashboard Priv     |
|                     | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                              | Search Customs Entries PrivView              |
|                     | Transportation Inquiry Duty                             | Customs Entries Priv                         |
|                     | Inventory Adjustment                                    | Search Transportation Priv                   |
|                     | Management Duty   | View Transportation Priv                     |
|                     | Inventory and Sales Inquiry<br>Duty                     | Maintain Inventory Adjustments<br>Priv       |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role             | Duty   | List of Privileges  |
|------------------|--|---|
|                  | Intercompany Transfer Approval<br>Duty               | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv                                       |
|                  | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty                | Approve Intercompany Transfers Priv   |
|                  | Intercompany Transfer<br>Management Duty             | View Intercompany Transfers Priv  |
|                  | MRT Approval Duty                                    | Maintain Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                                     |
|                  | MRT Inquiry Duty                                     | Submit Intercompany Transfers   |
|                  | MRT Management Duty                                  | Priv  |
|                  | RTV Approval Duty                                    | Approve MRTs Priv   |
|                  | RTV Inquiry Duty                                     | Search MRTs Priv  |
|                  | Shipment and Receipts Inquiry                        | View MRTs Priv  |
|                  | Duty   | Maintain MRTs Priv  |
|                  | Shipment and Receipts Management Duty                | Submit MRTs Priv  |
|                  | Transfer Approval Duty                               | Approve RTVs Priv   |
|                  | Transfer Inquiry Duty                                | Search RTVs Priv  |
|                  | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND                            | View RTVs Priv  |
|                  | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty                | View Shipments and Receipts Priv<br>Maintain Shipments and Receipts<br>Priv |
|                  | Transfer Management Duty                             | Approve Transfers Priv  |
|                  | Transfer with Finishing                              | View Transfers Priv   |
|                  | Management Duty                                      | Search Transfers Priv   |
|                  | Diff Management Duty                                 | Maintain Transfers Priv   |
|                  | Item Inquiry Duty                                    | Submit Transfers Priv   |
|                  | Stock Count Inquiry Duty Stock Count Management Duty | Maintain Transfers with Finishing<br>Priv                                   |
|                  |  | Use Diffs Priv  |
|                  |  | Search Items Priv   |
|                  |  | View Items Priv   |
|                  |  | View Item Locations Priv  |
|                  |  | View Item Suppliers Priv  |
|                  |  | Search Purchase Orders Priv   |
|                  |  | View Purchase Orders Priv   |
|                  |  | Close Purchase Orders Priv  |
|                  |  | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv   |
|                  |  | Submit Purchase Orders Priv   |
|                  |  | View Stock Count Units Priv   |
|                  |  | View Stock Counts Priv  |
|                  |  | Maintain Stock Count Units Priv   |
|                  |  | Maintain Stock Counts Priv  |
| nventory Control | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty                        | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv   |
| Manager          | Asynchronous Job Management<br>Duty                  | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv   |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty  | List of Privileges                                   |
|------|---|--|
|      | Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty         | View Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Priv     |
|      | Inventory Control Inquiry Duty                          | Maintain Foundation Data<br>through Spreadsheet Priv |
|      | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                              | View Competitive Shop Priv                           |
|      | Transportation Inquiry Duty                             | Maintain Competitive Shop Priv                       |
|      | Inventory Adjustment<br>Management Duty                 | Approve Contracts Priv                               |
|      | Inventory and Sales Inquiry                             | Search Contracts Priv                                |
|      | Duty  | View Contracts Priv                                  |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Approval<br>Duty                  | Maintain Contracts Priv                              |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry                           | Submit Contracts Priv                                |
|      | Duty  | Approve Cost Changes Priv                            |
|      | Intercompany Transfer                                   | Search Cost Changes Priv                             |
|      | Management Duty   | View Cost Changes Priv                               |
|      | MRT Approval Duty                                       | Maintain Cost Changes Priv                           |
|      | MRT Inquiry Duty  | Submit Cost Changes Priv                             |
|      | MRT Management Duty                                     | View Cost Zones Priv                                 |
|      | RTV Approval Duty                                       | Maintain Cost Zones Priv                             |
|      | RTV Inquiry Duty  | View Buyer Dashboard Priv                            |
|      | Shipment and Receipts Inquiry<br>Duty                   | View Finance Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv               |
|      | Shipment and Receipts<br>Management Duty                | View Inventory Analyst<br>Dashboard Priv             |
|      | Transfer Approval Duty                                  | View Inventory Control                               |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty                                   | Dashboard Priv                                       |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND Intercompany Transfer Inquiry | View Data Steward Dashboard<br>Priv                  |
|      | Duty  | Approve Deals Priv                                   |
|      | Transfer Management Duty                                | Search Deals Priv                                    |
|      | Transfer Management Duty                                | View Deals Priv                                      |
|      | Transfer with Finishing<br>Management Duty              | Maintain Deals Priv                                  |
|      | Diff Management Duty                                    | Submit Deals Priv                                    |
|      | Item Inquiry Duty                                       | View Expense Profiles Priv                           |
|      | Item Location Inquiry Duty                              | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv                       |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty                              | View Up Charges Priv                                 |
|      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty                             | Maintain Up Charges Priv                             |
|      | Purchase Order Management                               | Maintain Average Cost Priv                           |
|      | Duty  | View Budgets Priv                                    |
|      | Stock Count Inquiry Duty                                | Maintain Budgets Priv                                |
|      | Stock Count Management Duty                             | View Finance Admin Priv                              |
|      |   | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                          |
|      |   | View Financial Control Priv                          |
|      |   | Maintain Financial Control Priv                      |
|      |   | View GL Drill Back Priv                              |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | List of Privileges                            |
|------|------|---|
|      |      | View Transaction Data Priv                    |
|      |      | View Franchise Cost Priv                      |
|      |      | Maintain Franchise Cost Priv                  |
|      |      | View Franchise Foundation Priv                |
|      |      | Maintain Franchise Foundation<br>Priv         |
|      |      | Approve Franchise Orders and Returns Priv     |
|      |      | View Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv     |
|      |      | Maintain Franchise Orders and<br>Returns Priv |
|      |      | Search Actual Landed Cost Priv                |
|      |      | View Actual Landed Cost Priv                  |
|      |      | Finalize Actual Landed Cost Priv              |
|      |      | Confirm Customs Entries Priv                  |
|      |      | Search Customs Entries Priv                   |
|      |      | View Customs Entries Priv                     |
|      |      | Maintain Customs Entries Priv                 |
|      |      | Submit Customs Entries Priv                   |
|      |      | View Import Foundation Priv                   |
|      |      | Maintain Import Foundation Pri                |
|      |      | View Import Items Priv                        |
|      |      | Maintain Import Items Priv                    |
|      |      | Approve Letters of Credit Priv                |
|      |      | Confirm Letters of Credit Priv                |
|      |      | Search Letters of Credit Priv                 |
|      |      | View Letters of Credit Priv                   |
|      |      | Maintain Letters of Credit Priv               |
|      |      | Submit Letters of Credit Priv                 |
|      |      | Approve Obligations Priv                      |
|      |      | Search Obligations Priv                       |
|      |      | View Obligations Priv                         |
|      |      | Maintain Obligations Priv                     |
|      |      | Search Transportation Priv                    |
|      |      | View Transportation Priv                      |
|      |      | Finalize Transportation Priv                  |
|      |      | Maintain Transportation Priv                  |
|      |      | Maintain Inventory Adjustments<br>Priv        |
|      |      | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv         |
|      |      | Approve Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv        |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role             | Duty                                | List of Privileges  |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|                  |                                     | View Intercompany Transfers Priv                                |
|                  |                                     | Maintain Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                         |
|                  |                                     | Submit Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv                           |
|                  |                                     | Approve MRTs Priv   |
|                  |                                     | Search MRTs Priv  |
|                  |                                     | View MRTs Priv  |
|                  |                                     | Maintain MRTs Priv  |
|                  |                                     | Submit MRTs Priv  |
|                  |                                     | Approve RTVs Priv   |
|                  |                                     | Search RTVs Priv  |
|                  |                                     | View RTVs Priv  |
| Sourcing Analyst | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty       | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                                     |
|                  | Asynchronous Job Management         | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                                 |
|                  | Duty<br>Foundation Data through     | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv                    |
|                  | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty            | View Cost Changes Priv  |
|                  | Cost Change Inquiry Duty            | View Cost Zones Priv  |
|                  | Cost Zone Inquiry Duty              | Maintain Cost Zones Priv  |
|                  | Cost Zone Management Duty           | View Expense Profiles Priv                                      |
|                  | Expense Inquiry Duty                | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv                                  |
|                  | Expense Management Duty             | Search Actual Landed Cost Priv                                  |
|                  | ALC Inquiry Duty                    | View Actual Landed Cost Priv                                    |
|                  | ALC Management Duty                 | Finalize Actual Landed Cost Priv                                |
|                  | Customs Entry Confirmation Duty     | Confirm Customs Entries Priv                                    |
|                  | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty          | Search Customs Entries Priv                                     |
|                  | Customs Entry Management            | View Customs Entries Priv                                       |
|                  | Duty                                | Maintain Customs Entries Priv                                   |
|                  | Import Item Inquiry Duty            | Submit Customs Entries Priv                                     |
|                  | Import Item Management Duty         | View Import Items Priv  |
|                  | Letter of Credit Approval Duty      | Maintain Import Items Priv                                      |
|                  | Letter of Credit Inquiry Duty       | Approve Letters of Credit Priv                                  |
|                  | Letter of Credit Management<br>Duty | Confirm Letters of Credit Priv<br>Search Letters of Credit Priv |
|                  | Obligation Approval Duty            | View Letters of Credit Priv                                     |
|                  | Obligation Inquiry Duty             | Maintain Letters of Credit Priv                                 |
|                  | Obligation Management Duty          | Submit Letters of Credit Priv                                   |
|                  | Transportation Inquiry Duty         | Approve Obligations Priv  |
|                  | Transportation Management Duty      | Search Obligations Priv   |
|                  | Diff Management Duty                | View Obligations Priv   |
|                  | Item Inquiry Duty                   | Maintain Obligations Priv                                       |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role            | Duty                              | List of Privileges   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|--|
|                 | Item Location Inquiry Duty        | Search Transportation Priv                                     |
|                 | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty        | View Transportation Priv                                       |
|                 | Item Supplier Management<br>Duty  | Finalize Transportation Priv                                   |
|                 |                                   | Maintain Transportation Priv                                   |
|                 | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty       | Use Diffs Priv   |
|                 | Purchase Order Management         | Search Items Priv  |
|                 | Duty Required Document Inquiry    | View Items Priv  |
|                 | Duty                              | View Item Locations Priv                                       |
|                 | Required Document                 | View Item Suppliers Priv                                       |
|                 | Management Duty                   | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                                   |
|                 | Partner Inquiry Duty              | Search Purchase Orders Priv                                    |
|                 | Partner Management Duty           | View Purchase Orders Priv                                      |
|                 | Supplier Inquiry Duty             | Close Purchase Orders Priv                                     |
|                 |                                   | Maintain Purchase Orders Priv                                  |
|                 |                                   | Submit Purchase Orders Priv                                    |
|                 |                                   | View Required Documents Priv                                   |
|                 |                                   | Maintain Required Documents<br>Priv                            |
|                 |                                   | Search Partners Priv   |
|                 |                                   | View Partners Priv   |
|                 |                                   | Maintain Partners Priv   |
|                 |                                   | Search Suppliers Priv  |
|                 |                                   | View Suppliers Priv  |
|                 |                                   | Maintain Suppliers Priv  |
| Finance Analyst | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty     | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                                    |
|                 | Asynchronous Job Management       | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                                |
|                 | Duty<br>Foundation Data through   | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv                   |
|                 | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty          | View Competitive Shop Priv                                     |
|                 | Competitor Inquiry Duty           | View Finance Analyst Dashboard                                 |
|                 | Finance Analyst Inquiry Duty      | Priv   |
|                 | Deal Approval Duty                | Approve Deals Priv   |
|                 | Deal Inquiry Duty                 | Search Deals Priv  |
|                 | Deal Management Duty              | View Deals Priv  |
|                 | Deal Management Duty              | Maintain Deals Priv  |
|                 | Budgets Inquiry Duty              | Submit Deals Priv  |
|                 | Finance Admin Inquiry Duty        | View Budgets Priv  |
|                 | Finance Admin Management<br>Duty  | View Finance Admin Priv  |
|                 | Financial Control Inquiry Duty    | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                                    |
|                 | Thiancial Control Induity Duty    |  |
|                 | Financial Control Management Duty | View Financial Control Priv<br>Maintain Financial Control Priv |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty                                     | List of Privileges                    |
|------|--|---------------------------------------|
|      | Obligation Inquiry Duty                  | View Customs Entries Priv             |
|      | Transportation Inquiry Duty              | Search Obligations Priv               |
|      | Inventory and Sales Inquiry              | View Obligations Priv                 |
|      | Duty                                     | Search Transportation Priv            |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry Duty       | View Transportation Priv              |
|      | Intercompany Transfer<br>Management Duty | View Item Inventory and Sales<br>Priv |
|      | MRT Inquiry Duty                         | View Intercompany Transfers Priv      |
|      | RTV Inquiry Duty                         | Maintain Intercompany Transfers       |
|      | Shipment and Receipts Inquiry Duty       | Priv Submit Intercompany Transfers    |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty                    | Priv                                  |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND                | Search MRTs Priv                      |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry            | View MRTs Priv                        |
|      | Duty                                     | Search RTVs Priv                      |
|      | Transfer Management Duty                 | View RTVs Priv                        |
|      | Diff Management Duty                     | View Shipments and Receipts Priv      |
|      | Item Inquiry Duty                        | View Transfers Priv                   |
|      | Item List Inquiry Duty                   | Search Transfers Priv                 |
|      | Item List Management Duty                | Maintain Transfers Priv               |
|      | Item Location Inquiry Duty               | Use Diffs Priv                        |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty               | Search Items Priv                     |
|      | Price Change Inquiry Duty                | View Items Priv                       |
|      | Location List Inquiry Duty               | Search Item Lists Priv                |
|      | Location List Management Duty            | View Item Lists Priv                  |
|      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty              | Maintain Item Lists Priv              |
|      | Stock Count Inquiry Duty                 | View Item Locations Priv              |
|      | Stock Count Value Management             | View Item Suppliers Priv              |
|      | Duty                                     | View Price Change History Priv        |
|      | Stock Ledger Inquiry Duty                | Search Location Lists Priv            |
|      | Partner Activation Duty                  | View Location Lists Priv              |
|      | Partner Inquiry Duty                     | Maintain Location Lists Priv          |
|      | Partner Management Duty                  | Search Purchase Orders Priv           |
|      | Supplier Activation Duty                 | View Purchase Orders Priv             |
|      | Supplier Inquiry Duty                    | View Stock Count Units Priv           |
|      | Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty          | View Stock Counts Priv                |
|      | Supplier Inventory Management            | Maintain Stock Count Values Priv      |
|      | Duty<br>Supplier Management Duty         | View Stock Ledger Priv                |
|      |  | Activate Partners Priv                |
|      | VAT Inquiry Duty                         | Deactivate Partners Priv              |
|      |  | Search Partners Priv                  |
|      |  | View Partners Priv                    |
|      |  | View Suppliers Priv                   |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role                 | Duty                                    | List of Privileges                                       |
|----------------------|---|--|
|                      |   | Activate Suppliers Priv                                  |
|                      |   | Deactivate Suppliers Priv                                |
|                      |   | Search Suppliers Priv                                    |
|                      |   | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv               |
|                      |   | Maintain Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv           |
|                      |   | Maintain Suppliers Priv                                  |
|                      |   | View VAT Priv  |
| Supply Chain Analyst | Asynchronous Job Inquiry Duty           | View Asynchronous Jobs Priv                              |
|                      | Asynchronous Job Management             | Maintain Asynchronous Jobs Priv                          |
|                      | Duty Foundation Data through            | View Foundation Data via<br>Spreadsheet Priv             |
|                      | Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty                | View Cost Zones Priv                                     |
|                      | Cost Zone Inquiry Duty                  | Maintain Cost Zones Priv                                 |
|                      | Cost Zone Management Duty               | View Expense Profiles Priv                               |
|                      | Expense Inquiry Duty                    | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv                           |
|                      | Expense Management Duty                 | View Up Charges Priv                                     |
|                      | Up Charge Inquiry Duty                  | Maintain Up Charges Priv                                 |
|                      | Up Charge Management Duty               | Search Transportation Priv                               |
|                      | Transportation Inquiry Duty             | View Transportation Priv                                 |
|                      | Transportation Management               | Finalize Transportation Priv                             |
|                      | Duty Diff Management Duty               | Maintain Transportation Priv                             |
|                      | Item Inquiry Duty                       | Use Diffs Priv   |
|                      | Item List Inquiry Duty                  | Search Items Priv  |
|                      | Item List Management Duty               | View Items Priv  |
|                      | Item Location Inquiry Duty              | Search Item Lists Priv                                   |
|                      | Item Location Management                | View Item Lists Priv                                     |
|                      | Duty                                    | Maintain Item Lists Priv                                 |
|                      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty              | View Item Locations Priv                                 |
|                      | Item Supplier Management<br>Duty        | Maintain Item Locations Priv<br>View Item Suppliers Priv |
|                      | Location Inquiry Duty                   | Maintain Item Suppliers Priv                             |
|                      | Location List Inquiry Duty              | View Stores Priv   |
|                      | Location List Management Duty           | View Warehouses Priv                                     |
|                      | Supply Chain Network Inquiry<br>Duty    | Search Location Lists Priv                               |
|                      | Supply Chain Network<br>Management Duty | View Location Lists Priv<br>Maintain Location Lists Priv |
|                      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty             | View Supply Chain Network Priv                           |
|                      | Replenishment Inquiry Duty              | Maintain Supply Chain Network                            |
|                      | Supplier Inventory Management<br>Duty   | Priv Search Purchase Orders Priv                         |
|                      | Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty         | View Suppliers Priv                                      |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role            | Duty  | List of Privileges                               |
|-----------------|---|--|
|                 | Supplier Inquiry Duty                               | View Purchase Orders Priv                        |
|                 | Supplier Management Duty                            | View Replenishment Attributes<br>Priv            |
|                 |   | Search Suppliers Priv                            |
|                 |   | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv       |
|                 |   | Maintain Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv   |
|                 |   | Maintain Suppliers Priv                          |
| Finance Manager | Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Inquiry Duty | View Foundation Data through<br>Spreadsheet Priv |
|                 | Finance Analyst Inquiry Duty Expense Inquiry Duty   | View Finance Analyst Dashboard<br>Priv           |
|                 | Expense Management Duty                             | View Expense Profiles Priv                       |
|                 | Up Charge Inquiry Duty                              | Maintain Expense Profiles Priv                   |
|                 | Up Charge Management Duty                           | View Up Charges Priv                             |
|                 | Average Cost Management Duty                        | Maintain Up Charges Priv                         |
|                 | Budgets Inquiry Duty                                | Maintain Average Cost Priv                       |
|                 | Budgets Management Duty                             | View Budgets Priv                                |
|                 | Finance Admin Inquiry Duty                          | Maintain Budgets Priv                            |
|                 | Finance Admin Management                            | View Finance Admin Priv                          |
|                 | Duty  | Maintain Finance Admin Priv                      |
|                 | Financial Control Inquiry Duty                      | View Financial Control Priv                      |
|                 | Financial Control Management                        | Maintain Financial Control Priv                  |
|                 | Duty  | Search Actual Landed Cost Priv                   |
|                 | ALC Inquiry Duty                                    | View Actual Landed Cost Priv                     |
|                 | ALC Management Duty                                 | Finalize Actual Landed Cost Priv                 |
|                 | Customs Entry Inquiry Duty                          | Search Customs Entries Priv                      |
|                 | Letter of Credit Approval Duty                      | View Customs Entries Priv                        |
|                 | Letter of Credit Inquiry Duty                       | Approve Letters of Credit Priv                   |
|                 | Letter of Credit Management<br>Duty                 | Confirm Letters of Credit Priv                   |
|                 | Obligation Approval Duty                            | Search Letters of Credit Priv                    |
|                 | Obligation Inquiry Duty                             | View Letters of Credit Priv                      |
|                 | Obligation Management Duty                          | Maintain Letters of Credit Priv                  |
|                 | Transportation Inquiry Duty                         | Submit Letters of Credit Priv                    |
|                 | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry                       | Approve Obligations Priv                         |
|                 | Duty  | Search Obligations Priv                          |
|                 | Intercompany Transfer                               | View Obligations Priv                            |
|                 | Management Duty                                     | Maintain Obligations Priv                        |
|                 | MRT Inquiry Duty                                    | Search Transportation Priv                       |
|                 | RTV Inquiry Duty                                    | View Transportation Priv                         |
|                 | Shipment and Receipts Inquiry<br>Duty               | View Intercompany Transfers Priv                 |
|                 | Item Inquiry Duty                                   | View RTVs Priv                                   |

Table 11–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty                                  | List of Privileges                         |
|------|---------------------------------------|--|
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty                 | Maintain Intercompany Transfers            |
|      | Transfer Inquiry Duty AND             | Priv                                       |
|      | Intercompany Transfer Inquiry<br>Duty | Submit Intercompany Transfers<br>Priv      |
|      | Transfer Management Duty              | Approve MRTs Priv                          |
|      | Diff Management Duty                  | Search MRTs Priv                           |
|      | Item Location Inquiry Duty            | View MRTs Priv                             |
|      | Item Supplier Inquiry Duty            | Search RTVs Priv                           |
|      | Price Change Inquiry Duty             | View Shipments and Receipts Priv           |
|      | DSD Management Duty                   | View Transfers Priv                        |
|      | Purchase Order Inquiry Duty           | Search Transfers Priv                      |
|      | Receipt Adjustments by Cost           | Maintain Transfers Priv                    |
|      | Management Duty                       | Use Diffs Priv                             |
|      | Stock Count Inquiry Duty              | Search Items Priv                          |
|      | Stock Count Management Duty           | View Items Priv                            |
|      | Stock Count Value Management<br>Duty  | View Item Locations Priv                   |
|      | Stock Ledger Inquiry Duty             | View Item Suppliers Priv                   |
|      | Stock Ledger Management Duty          | View Price Change History Priv             |
|      | Partner Activation Duty               | Maintain DSD Orders Priv                   |
|      | Partner Inquiry Duty                  | Search Purchase Orders Priv                |
|      | Partner Management Duty               | View Purchase Orders Priv                  |
|      | Supplier Activation Duty              | Maintain Receipt Adjustments by Cost Priv  |
|      | Supplier Inquiry Duty                 | View Stock Count Units Priv                |
|      | Supplier Inventory Inquiry Duty       | View Stock Counts Priv                     |
|      | Supplier Inventory Management         | Maintain Stock Count Values Priv           |
|      | Duty                                  | View Stock Ledger Priv                     |
|      | Supplier Management Duty              | Maintain Stock Ledger Priv                 |
|      | VAT Inquiry Duty                      | Activate Partners Priv                     |
|      | VAT Management Duty                   | Deactivate Partners Priv                   |
|      |                                       | Search Partners Priv                       |
|      |                                       | View Partners Priv                         |
|      |                                       | Maintain Partners Priv                     |
|      |                                       | Activate Suppliers Priv                    |
|      |                                       | Deactivate Suppliers Priv                  |
|      |                                       | Search Suppliers Priv                      |
|      |                                       | View Suppliers Priv                        |
|      |                                       | View Supplier Inventory<br>Management Priv |
|      |                                       | Maintain Suppliers Priv                    |
|      |                                       | View VAT Priv                              |
|      |                                       | Maintain VAT Priv                          |

# **Data Security Views**

In RMS application as part of security, all search screens and LOVs (List of Values) access the views. Those users who have privileges will only be able to see the data from these views.

These views are implemented by the following scripts:

- add\_filter\_policy.sql
  - This script adds filter policy to four main categories of data in RMS
    - Organizational Hierarchy Filtering Policies: Views under this category are V\_CHAIN, V\_AREA, V\_REGION, V\_DISTRICT, V\_STORE, V\_WH, V\_ EXTERNAL FINISHER, V INTERNAL FINISHER and V TSF ENTITY
    - Merchandise Hierarchy Filtering Policies: V\_DIVISION, V\_GROUPS, V\_ DEPS, V\_CLASS, V\_SUBCLASS and V\_ITEM\_MASTER
    - Data Element Filtering Policies: V\_DIFF\_GROUP\_HEAD, V\_LOC\_LIST\_ HEAD, V\_LOC\_TRAITS, V\_SEASONS, V\_SKULIST\_HEAD, V\_TICKET\_ TYPE\_HEAD, V\_UDA and V\_SUPS
    - Product Location Security Policies: V TRANSFER FROM STORE, V TRANSFER\_FROM\_WH, V\_TRANSFER\_TO\_STORE and V\_TRANSFER\_ TO WH

# Other Common Application Administration

This section covers the common Application Administration.

### File Permissions

For file permission, the following permissions should be given to users to access files once the installation is complete:

- All configuration files should at most have 660 permission
- All static data (flat files) should at most have 640 permission

Based on the permissions above, besides the owner (the installer user), the group member can also view, read, modify the configuration files, and read the static file. A user out of the group cannot perform any action on the ReSA files. Explicit permissions need to be given by the Administrator to users outside of the group.

# Data Access Schema (DAS) - Overview

Data Access Schema (DAS) is an extension of RMS database used by external applications requiring RMS data. The external applications extracting data from RMS increases the server load on the main RMS schema which impacts the performance of core RMS functionality. The data in the DAS schema is replicated real time from the main RMS schema allowing the server load of the extract job to be restricted to this separate database.

The core RMS tables are replicated to the DAS schema in near real time. On top of these replicated tables, there is a layer of data base views which structures the data and exposes them as business data. An external application that is not aware of the RMS data structure can read the business data exposed.

For a new external application required data extract from RMS, the client should check if the existing tables and views in the DAS schema is sufficient. If not, the RMS table

should be included in the list of replicated tables. The client should also build additional views on top of the table or views to structure the data in way it is useful to the requesting application while also considering the reuse for the view for any future

The DAS schema is exposed to the external application as a read only schema and external applications should not write into this schema:

- Database tables which are replicated from main RMS schema should not be accessed directly from external application. The external application should always access the data using the views only. This will avoid changes to the external application when there is a change in RMS table structure. Any change in RMS data structure should be transparent to the external application just by changing the view built on these tables.
- The external application should not be granted permission on the database views. The access to the views should be restricted based on the functional data requirement for a specific application.

# Post Installation Steps for Webservice Security

You need to configure the user credentials and other security related information at the service consumer and the app service provider layers, in order to provide end to end security between web service consumer and the provider.

#### Note:

- The following steps are used for webservices deployed according to the Oracle Retail Installation guides.
- The following steps are not applicable for RSB. For more information, see the Oracle Retail Service Backbone Security Guide.

# Applying Policy A

Applying policy A involves the following:

- **Enabling the HTTPS servers**
- Creating the Webservice users
- Securing services
- Updating the Webservice deployment
- Webservice Clock Skew setting

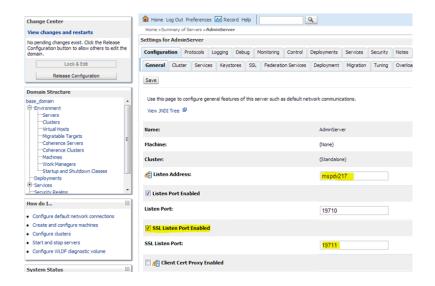
### **Enabling the HTTPS servers**

Perform the following steps to enable HTTPS servers:

- In WebLogic Admin Console, click Environment > Servers.
- Click the server where the web service has been deployed.
- Click the **General** tab.
- Check the SSL Listen Port Enabled check box.
- Enter a port number for the SSL Listen Port. This is the port number for service end point.
- Enter the hostname in Listen Address field.

#### 7. Click Save.

Figure 11-1 Enabling the HTTPS Servers



## Creating the Webservice User

Perform the following steps to create roles and users who can access the Web services:

- In WebLogic Admin Console, click the Domain Structure window, and click the Security Realms link.
  - The default realm appears.
- Click the link on the realm.
- Click the **Users and Groups** tab.
- 4. Click **New**.
- Enter the user name and password details on the next screen.
- Leave the default value for Provider.
- Click **OK** to save the changes.

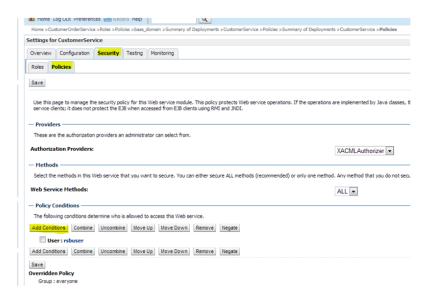
The new user is shown in the list of users.

### Securing services

Perform the following steps in WebLogic Admin Console for each of the services to be secured:

- Attach the user created in previous step to the service.
- Click Deployments.
- Click the service you want to secure.
- Click **Securities** and then **Policies**.

Figure 11-2 Securing Services



**5.** Click Add **Conditions** > Predict List: Pick User from dropdown > Next > User Argument Name: > Type username you created > Add > Finish > Save.

Figure 11–3 Add Conditions Window



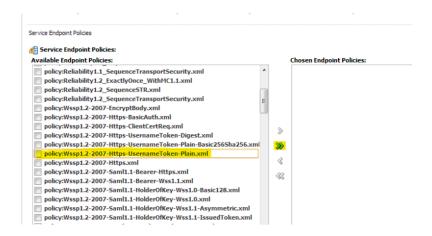
- Attach policy to the service.
- Navigate to **Configuration** tab.
- Click **WSB Policy** tab and select the service port.

Figure 11-4 Attaching WS Policy to the Service



Pick WebLogic > Next > Service Endpoint Policies: select policy:Wssp1.22007HttpsUsernameTokenPlain.xml > Finish

Figure 11-5 Service Endpoint Policies



**10.** Click **OK** if WebLogic prompts you to save Plan.xml.

### Updating the Webservice deployment

Perform the following steps to update the Webservice deployment:

- In WebLogic Admin Console, click **Deployments**.
- Click Lock & Edit and select the deployed application which has the Webservices to be secured.
- Click **Update** and select the deployment ear along with the Plan.xml if saved in the previous steps.
- Click Finish.
- Click **Activate Changes** to reflect the changes.
- Verify the configuration by checking the WSDL of the service. The WSDL must have the policy information in it.

## Webservice Clock Skew setting

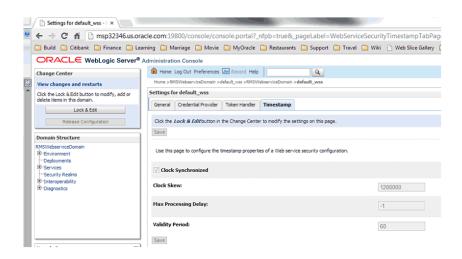
Webservices when secured need to be time synched with providers and consumers. However, due to various reasons the providers and consumers can have different time gap.

Weblogic can be configured to different tolerance level for webservices to work.

Perform the following steps to set the tolerance level of time different:

- 1. Navigate to WLS Console > Domain > Web Service Security > default\_wss > Timestamp.
- Click Lock and Edit and update the Clock Skew with tolerance limit (in milliseconds).
- Click **Activate Changes**.

Figure 11–6 Setting the Tolerance Level of Time Different



Bounce the managed server hosting Webservice once the changes are implemented.

# Applying Policy B

Applying policy B involves the following:

- Creating the Webservice users
- Securing services
- Updating the Webservice deployment

### Creating the Webservice user

Perform the following steps to create roles and users who can access the Web services:

- In WebLogic Admin Console, click the Domain Structure window, and click the Security Realms link.
  - The default realm appears.
- Click the link on the realm.
- 3. Click the **Users and Groups** tab.

- 4. Click New.
- Enter the user name and password details on the next screen.
- Leave the default value for Provider.
- **7.** Click **OK** to save the changes.

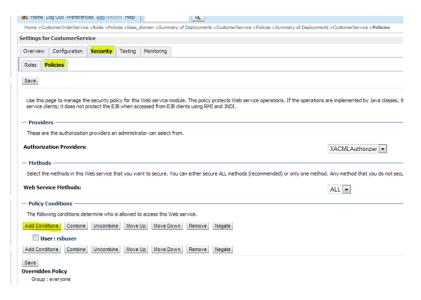
The new user is shown in the list of users.

#### Securing services

Perform the following steps in WebLogic Admin Console for each of the services to be secured:

- Attach the user created in previous step to the service.
- Click Deployments.
- Click the service you want to secure.
- Click **Securities** and then **Policies**.

Figure 11-7 Securing Services



5. Click Add Conditions > Predict List: Pick User from dropdown > Next > User Argument Name: > Type username you created > Add > Finish > Save.

Figure 11–8 Add Conditions Window



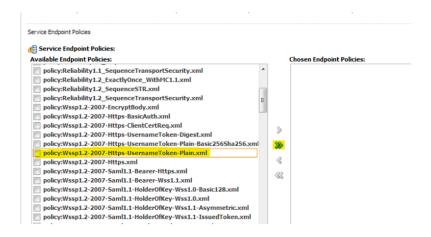
- **6.** Attach policy to the service.
- Navigate to **Configuration** tab.
- Click **WSB Policy** tab and select the service port.

Figure 11-9 Attaching WS Policy to the Service



Pick WebLogic > Next > Service Endpoint Policies: select policy:Wssp1.22007HttpsUsernameTokenPlain.xml > Finish

Figure 11–10 Service Endpoint Policies



**10.** Click **OK** if WebLogic prompts you to save Plan.xml.

#### **Updating the Webservice deployment**

Perform the following steps to update the Webservice deployment:

- In WebLogic Admin Console, click **Deployments**.
- Click Lock & Edit and select the deployed application which has the Webservices to be secured.
- 3. Click **Update** and select the deployment ear along with the Plan.xml if saved in the previous steps.
- Click Finish.

- Click **Activate Changes** to reflect the changes.
- Verify the configuration by checking the WSDL of the service. The WSDL must have the policy information in it.

#### ReSTful Services

Services are secured using J2EE-based security model.

- **Realm-based User Authentication**: This verifies users through an underlying Realm. The username and password is passed using HTTP basic authentication.
- Role-based Authorization: This assigns users to roles; you can either grant or restrict access to the resource/service. The authorization to the ReSTful Web services is static and cannot be reassigned to other roles during post installation.

Role Name: DATA\_STEWARD\_MANAGER

Principal Name: DATA\_STEWARD\_MANAGER\_JOB

All enterprise roles defined in the table are mapped in web.xml and weblogic.xml of the ReST Service web application.

- The communication between the server and the client is encrypted using one way SSL. In a non-SSL environment, the encoding defaults to BASE-64 so it is highly recommended that these ReST services are configured to be used in production environments secured with SSL connections.
- RMS user data security is implemented in the APIs. The application user ID should be added to the RMS SEC\_USER.APP\_USER\_ID table then associated to the appropriate group in SEC\_USER \_GROUP table.

For more information on the secure implementation of Webservices, see the RMS Implementation Guide.

| Post Installation Steps f | for Webservice | Security |
|---------------------------|----------------|----------|
|---------------------------|----------------|----------|

## **Extending/Customization**

Customization and extending capabilities is an important part of any application. This chapter discusses how to securely implement customizations and extensions such that they do not jeopardize application security.

If customization is required it should be done in such a way that no built-in explicit security features would be circumvented.

If additional integration credentials are required, the customization should store them in the Secure Credential Store along with all other RMS credentials.

# Part III

## **Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA)**

Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA) is a part of the Merchandise Operations Management (MOM) product group. The chapters mentioned below are for users and administrators of Oracle Retail Sales Audit. This includes auditors, auditor managers, finance manager, and administrative personnel.

Part III contains the following chapters:

ReSA Security Considerations

For more information on ReSA Security Considerations, see Chapter 8, "Functional Security for Applications Using Fusion Middleware".

## **ReSA Security Considerations**

The chapter provides guidance for administrators to understand, configure, and customize functional security for the Oracle Retail Sales Audit (ReSA) application.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- **Default Security Configuration**
- **Data Security**
- Securing ReSA Tables

**Note:** ReSA should implement similar file permissions as the RMS. For more information, see File Permissions.

### **Default Security Configuration**

Access control of system resources is achieved by requiring users to authenticate at login and by restricting users to only those resources for which they are authorized. A default security configuration is available for immediate use after the Oracle Retail Fusion application is installed and is configured to use the Oracle Fusion Middleware security model. The default configuration includes four predefined security roles for application specific permission grants. Users can be added to predefined groups that are mapped to pre-configured application roles. ReSA is pre-configured to grant specific application permissions.

Table 13-1 Privileges

| Name                     | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Search Store Days Priv   | A privilege for searching for store days and store day total transaction data summary information (transaction data summary).   |
| Maintain Store Days Priv | A privilege for editing a store day including error list, over/short totals, miscellaneous totals, combined totals, total export log, revisions of totals (total audit trail), missing transactions and comments. |
| Delete Store Day Priv    | A privilege for deleting a store day.   |

Table 13–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                     | Description   |
|--|---|
| View Store Day Priv                      | A privilege for viewing a store day including error list, over/short totals, miscellaneous totals, combined totals, total export log, revisions of totals (total audit trail), missing transactions, store day import log, store day export log, store day total transaction data summary information (transaction data summary), and comments. |
| Manually Set Store Day Data Status Priv  | A privilege for submitting an allocation for approval.  |
| Reset Store Day Audit Status Priv        | A privilege for resetting a store day's audit status.   |
| Search Transactions Priv                 | A privilege for searching for transactions, transaction revisions (audit trail) and transaction summaries (item and tender).  |
| Maintain Transactions Priv               | A privilege for creating and editing transactions, mass updating items on transactions through Item Summary, and comments.  |
| Delete Transactions Priv                 | A privilege for deleting transactions.  |
| View Transactions Priv                   | A privilege for viewing transactions, transaction revisions (audit trail), transaction summaries (item and tender) and comments.  |
| Post Void Transactions Priv              | A privilege for post voiding transactions.  |
| Maintain Application Administration Priv | A privilege for editing system options.   |
| View Application Administration Priv     | A privilege for viewing system options.   |
| Search Total Definition Priv             | A privilege for searching total definitions.  |
| Maintain Total Definition Priv           | A privilege for creating and editing total definitions.   |
| Submit Total Definition Priv             | A privilege for submitting a total definition for review.   |
| Approve Total Definition Priv            | A privilege for approving a total definition.   |
| Disable Total Definition Priv            | A privilege for disabling a total definition.   |
| Delete Total Definition Priv             | A privilege for deleting a total definition.  |
| View Total Definition Priv               | A privilege for viewing total definitions.  |
| Search Audit Rule Priv                   | A privilege for searching audit rules.  |
| Maintain Audit Rule Priv                 | A privilege for creating and editing audit rules.   |
| Submit Audit Rule Priv                   | A privilege for submitting an audit rule for review.  |
| Approve Audit Rule Priv                  | A privilege for approving an audit rule.  |
| Disable Audit Rule Priv                  | A privilege for disabling an audit rule.  |
| Delete Audit Rule Priv                   | A privilege for deleting an audit rule.   |
| View Audit Rule Priv                     | A privilege for viewing audit rules.  |
| Maintain ACH Information Priv            | A privilege for maintaining Bank ACH and Store ACH information.   |
| View ACH Information Priv                | A privilege for viewing Bank ACH and Store ACH information.   |

Table 13-1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Maintain ReSA Admin Data Priv                           | A privilege for maintaining error messages, GL (General Ledger) Cross Reference, Reference Fields, Currency Rounding Rules, and Store Data through Admin Data Loading.  |
| View ReSA Admin Data Priv                               | A privilege for viewing error messages, GL (General Ledger) Cross Reference, Reference Fields, Currency Rounding Rules, and Store Data through Admin Data Loading.  |
| View GL Drill Back Priv                                 | A privilege for viewing General Ledger Drill Back.  |
| View GL Cross Reference Priv                            | A privilege for viewing GL Cross Reference through Foundation Data Loading.   |
| Maintain Bank Store Priv                                | A privilege for maintaining Bank Store relationships.   |
| View Bank Store Priv                                    | A privilege for viewing Bank Store relationships.   |
| Maintain Employees Priv                                 | A privilege for viewing assigned stores for ReSA users through location traits.   |
| View Employees Priv                                     | A privilege for viewing assigned stores for ReSA users through location traits.   |
| Maintain Error Override Priv                            | A privilege for editing the Override check box on<br>the Error List tab in either the Store Day<br>Summary or Balance Level Summary screens.  |
| View Error Override Priv                                | A privilege for viewing the Override check box on the Error List tab in either the Store Day Summary, Balance Level Summary screens, or on the Sales Audit Errors popup.  |
| View Store Day Summary Over/Short<br>Value Priv         | A privilege for viewing the Over/Short value in the Status container in the Store Day Summary screen.   |
| View Balance Level Summary Over/Short<br>Value Priv     | A privilege for viewing the Over/Short value in the Status container in the Balance Level Summary screen.   |
| View Over/Short Totals Trial Over/Short<br>Values Priv  | A privilege for viewing the Trial Over/Short values in both the Accounted for and the Accountable containers on the Over/Short Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or the Balance Level Summary screens. |
| Maintain Over/Short Totals HQ Reported<br>Value Priv    | A privilege for editing the HQ Reported values in both the Accounted For and the Accountable For containers on the Over/Short Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens.      |
| View Over/Short Totals HQ Reported<br>Value Priv        | A privilege for viewing the HQ Reported values in both the Accounted For and the Accountable For containers on the Over/Short Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens.      |
| Maintain Miscellaneous Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv | A privilege for editing the HQ Reported value on<br>the Miscellaneous Totals tab in either the Store<br>Day Summary or Balance Level Summary<br>screens.  |

Table 13–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| View Miscellaneous Totals HQ Reported<br>Value Priv | A privilege for viewing the HQ Reported value on the Miscellaneous Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens.  |
| View System Calculated Totals Value Priv            | A privilege for viewing the System Reported Totals values in both the Accounted For and the Accountable For containers on the Over/Short Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens, as well as on the Miscellaneous Totals tab in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens. |
| View Flash Reports Priv                             | A privilege for viewing the Flash Totals and Flash Sales reports accessed through the main Tasks list or through the Store Day Summary screen.   |
| View Transaction Reports Priv                       | A privilege for viewing the Credit Card<br>Summary and the Voucher Activity reports<br>accessed through the main Tasks list.   |

Table 13-2 Duties

| Duty  | Description   | List of Privileges                                     |
|---|---|--|
| Store Day Inquiry                             | A duty for viewing store days.                                      | Search Store Days Priv                                 |
| Duty  |   | View Store Days Priv                                   |
|   |   | View Flash Reports Priv                                |
| Store Day<br>Management Duty                  | A duty for managing Store Days.<br>This duty is an extension of the | All privileges found in the Store<br>Day Inquiry Duty. |
|   | Store Day Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Store Day Priv                                |
|   |   | Delete Store Day Priv                                  |
| Store Day Manual<br>Status Update Duty        | A duty for setting a Store Day's<br>Data Status and Audit Status.   | Manually Set Store Day Data<br>Status Priv             |
|   |   | Reset Store Day Audit Status Priv                      |
| Transaction Inquiry                           | transaction revisions and   | Search Transactions Priv                               |
| Duty  |   | View Transactions Priv                                 |
|   |   | View Transaction Reports Priv                          |
| Transaction Management Duty                   | A duty for managing transactions. This duty is an                   | All privileges found in the Transaction Inquiry Duty.  |
|   | extension of the Transaction Inquiry Duty.                          | Maintain Transaction Priv                              |
|   | inquiry Buty.   | Delete Transaction Priv                                |
| Transaction Post Void<br>Duty                 | A duty for post voiding a transaction.                              | Post Void Transaction Priv                             |
| Application<br>Administration<br>Inquiry Duty | A duty for viewing ReSA<br>System Options.                          | View Application Administration<br>Priv                |

Table 13–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty   | Description  | List of Privileges   |
|--|--|--|
| Application<br>Administration<br>Management Duty | A duty for managing ReSA<br>System Options. This duty is an<br>extension of the Application  | All privileges found in the Application Administration Inquiry Duty. |
|  | Administration Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Application<br>Administration Priv                          |
| Total Definition                                 | A duty for viewing total   | Search Total Definition Priv   |
| Inquiry Duty                                     | definitions.   | View Total Definition Priv   |
| Total Definition<br>Management Duty              | A duty for managing total definitions. This duty is an   | All privileges found in the Total<br>Definition Inquiry Duty.        |
|  | extension of the Total Definition Inquiry Duty.  | Maintain Total Definition Priv                                       |
|  | 1 7 7  | Delete Total Definition Priv   |
| Total Definition<br>Submit Duty                  | A duty for submitting an Total Definition for approval.  | Submit Total Definition Priv   |
| Total Definition                                 | A duty for approving or  | Approve Total Definition Priv  |
| Review Duty                                      | disabling a total definition.  | Disable Total Definition Priv  |
| Audit Rule Inquiry                               | A duty for viewing audit rules.  | Search Audit Rule Priv   |
| Duty   |  | View Audit Rule Priv   |
| Audit Rule<br>Management Duty                    | A duty for managing audit rules.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Audit Rule Inquiry Duty.   | All privileges found in the Audit<br>Rule Inquiry Duty.              |
|  |  | Maintain Audit Rule Priv   |
|  |  | Delete Audit Rule Priv   |
| Audit Rule Submit<br>Duty                        | A duty for submitting an audit rule for approval.  | Submit Audit Rule Priv   |
| Audit Rule Review                                | A duty for approving or  | Approve Audit Rule Priv  |
| Duty   | disabling an audit rule.   | Disable Audit Rule Priv  |
| ACH Information<br>Inquiry Duty                  | A duty for viewing ACH information including Bank ACH and Store ACH.   | View ACH Information Priv  |
| ACH Information<br>Management Duty               | A duty for managing ACH information. This duty is an   | All privileges found in the ACH Information Inquiry Duty.            |
|  | extension of the ACH Information Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain ACH Information Priv  |
| ReSA Admin Data                                  | A duty for managing ReSA Error   | View ReSA Admin Data Priv  |
| Management Duty                                  | Messages, GL Cross Reference,<br>Reference Fields, Currency<br>Rounding Rules and Store Data<br>through the Upload and<br>Download Actions in Admin<br>Data Loading. This duty is an<br>extension of the Admin Data<br>Inquiry Duty. | Maintain ReSA Admin Data Priv  |
| Bank Store Inquiry<br>Duty                       | A duty for viewing Bank Store.   | View Bank Store Priv   |
| Bank Store<br>Management Duty                    | A duty for managing Bank Store.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Bank Store Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges found in the Bank<br>Store Inquiry Duty.              |
| Employee Inquiry<br>Duty                         | A duty for viewing Employee.   | Maintain Bank Store Priv  View Employees Priv                        |

Table 13–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty   | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|--|--|---|
| Employee<br>Management Duty                    |  | All privileges found in the Employee Inquiry Duty.                              |
|  |  | Maintain Employees Priv   |
| Error Override<br>Review Duty                  | A duty for viewing the Override check box on the Error List tab on either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens, or on the Sales Audit Errors popup.                      | View Error Override Priv  |
| Error Override<br>Management Duty              | A duty for the ability to override errors by checking the Override   | All privileges found in the Error<br>Override Review Duty.                      |
|  | check box on the Error List tab<br>on either the Store Day<br>Summary or Balance Level<br>Summary screens.   | Edit Error Override Priv  |
| Totals HQ Reported<br>Value Review Duty        | A duty for viewing the HQ<br>Reported values on both the   | View Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv                                |
|  | Over/Short Totals and<br>Miscellaneous Totals tabs on<br>either the Store Day Summary or<br>Balance Level Summary screens.   | View Miscellaneous Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv                             |
| Totals HQ Reported<br>Value Management         | Anagement errors by checking the Override check box on the Error List tab on either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level   | All privileges found in the Totals<br>HQ Reported Value Review Duty.            |
| Duty   |  | Edit Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value PrivEdit<br>Miscellaneous Totals HQ |
|  | Summary screens.   | Reported Value Priv   |
| Over/Short Value<br>Review Duty                | A duty for viewing the<br>Over/Short values in the Status  | View Store Day Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv                                 |
|  | container on either the Store Day<br>Summary or Balance Level<br>Summary screens as well as the  | View Balance Level Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv                             |
|  | Trial Over/Short values on the Over/Short Totals tabs in either the Store Day Summary or Balance Level Summary screens.  | View Over/Short Totals Trial<br>Over/Short Values Priv                          |
| Totals System<br>Reported Value<br>Review Duty | A duty for viewing the System<br>Reported values on both the<br>Over/Short Totals and<br>Miscellaneous Totals tabs on<br>either the Store Day Summary or<br>Balance Level Summary screens. | View System Calculated Totals<br>Value Priv                                     |
| GL Inquiry Duty                                | A duty for viewing GL Cross<br>Reference and GL Drill Back.  | View GL Cross Reference Priv<br>View GL Drill Back Priv                         |

Table 13–3 Function Security Mapping

| Duty                | Description  | List of Privileges                                  |
|---------------------|--|---|
| Sales Audit Analyst | Store Day Management Duty                                  | Search Store Days Priv                              |
|                     | Store Day Manual Status Update                             | Maintain Store Days Priv                            |
|                     | Duty   | Delete Store Day Priv                               |
|                     | Transaction Management Duty                                | View Store Day Priv                                 |
|                     | Transaction Post Void Duty                                 | Manually Set Store Day Data                         |
|                     | Total Definition Management<br>Duty                        | Status Priv   |
|                     | Total Definition Submit Duty                               | Reset Store Day Audit Status Priv                   |
|                     | Total Definition Review Duty                               | View Flash Reports Priv                             |
|                     | Audit Rule Management Duty                                 | Search Transactions Priv                            |
|                     | Audit Rule Submit Duty                                     | Maintain Transactions Priv                          |
|                     | Audit Rule Review Duty                                     | Delete Transactions Priv                            |
|                     | ACH Information Management                                 | View Transactions Priv                              |
|                     | Duty   | Post Void Transactions Priv                         |
|                     | Error Override Management                                  | View Transaction Reports Priv                       |
|                     | Duty   | Search Total Definition Priv                        |
|                     | Error Override Review Duty                                 | View Total Definition Priv                          |
|                     | Totals HQ Reported Value                                   | Maintain Total Definition Priv                      |
|                     | Management Duty<br>Totals HQ Reported Value<br>Review Duty | Delete Total Definition Priv                        |
|                     |  | Submit Total Definition Priv                        |
|                     | Totals System Reported Value<br>Review Duty                | Approve Total Definition Priv                       |
|                     |  | Disable Total Definition Priv                       |
|                     | Over/Short Value Review Duty                               | Search Audit Rule Priv                              |
|                     |  | View Audit Rule Priv                                |
|                     |  | Maintain Audit Rule Priv                            |
|                     |  | Delete Audit Rule Priv                              |
|                     |  | Submit Audit Rule Priv                              |
|                     |  | Approve Audit Rule Priv                             |
|                     |  | Disable Audit Rule Priv                             |
|                     |  | Maintain ACH Information Priv                       |
|                     |  | View ACH Information Priv                           |
|                     |  | Edit Error Override Priv                            |
|                     |  | View Error Override Priv                            |
|                     |  | Edit Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv    |
|                     |  | View Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv    |
|                     |  | Edit Miscellaneous Totals HQ                        |
|                     |  | Reported Value Priv                                 |
|                     |  | View Miscellaneous Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv |
|                     |  | View System Calculated Totals<br>Value Priv         |

Table 13–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Duty | Description | List of Privileges                                     |
|------|-------------|--|
|      |             | View Store Day Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv        |
|      |             | View Balance Level Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv    |
|      |             | View Over/Short Totals Trial<br>Over/Short Values Priv |

Table 13–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Duty                | Description                                 | List of Privileges                               |
|---------------------|---|--|
| Sales Audit Manager | Store Day Management Duty                   | Search Store Days Priv                           |
|                     | Store Day Manual Status Update              | Maintain Store Days Priv                         |
|                     | Duty  | Delete Store Day Priv                            |
|                     | Transaction Management Duty                 | View Store Day Priv                              |
|                     | Transaction Post Void Duty                  | Manually Set Store Day Data                      |
|                     | Total Definition Management                 | Status Priv                                      |
|                     | Duty Total Definition Submit Duty           | Reset Store Day Audit Status Priv                |
|                     | · ·   | View Flash Reports Priv                          |
|                     | Total Definition Review Duty                | Search Transactions Priv                         |
|                     | Audit Rule Management Duty                  | Maintain Transactions Priv                       |
|                     | Audit Rule Submit Duty                      | Delete Transactions Priv                         |
|                     | Audit Rule Review Duty                      | View Transactions Priv                           |
|                     | ACH Information Management Duty             | Post Void Transactions Priv                      |
|                     | ReSA Admin Data Management                  | View Transaction Reports Priv                    |
|                     | Duty  | Search Total Definition Priv                     |
|                     | Employee Management Duty                    | View Total Definition Priv                       |
|                     | Error Override Management                   | Maintain Total Definition Priv                   |
|                     | Duty  | Delete Total Definition Priv                     |
|                     | Error Override Review Duty                  | Submit Total Definition Priv                     |
|                     | Totals HQ Reported Value<br>Management Duty | Approve Total Definition Priv                    |
|                     | Totals HQ Reported Value<br>Review Duty     | Disable Total Definition Priv                    |
|                     |   | Search Audit Rule Priv                           |
|                     | J 1   | View Audit Rule Priv                             |
|                     | Over / Short Value Povious Duty             | Maintain Audit Rule Priv                         |
|                     |   | Delete Audit Rule Priv                           |
|                     |   | Submit Audit Rule Priv                           |
|                     |   | Approve Audit Rule Priv                          |
|                     |   | Disable Audit Rule Priv                          |
|                     |   | Maintain ACH Information Priv                    |
|                     |   | View ACH Information Priv                        |
|                     |   | Maintain ReSA Admin Data Priv                    |
|                     |   | View ReSA Admin Data Priv                        |
|                     |   | Maintain Employees Priv                          |
|                     |   | View Employees Priv                              |
|                     |   | Edit Error Override Priv                         |
|                     |   | View Error Override Priv                         |
|                     |   | Edit Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv |
|                     |   | View Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv |
|                     |   | Edit Miscellaneous Totals HQ                     |

Table 13–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Duty            | Description   | List of Privileges                                     |
|-----------------|---|--|
|                 |   | Reported Value Priv                                    |
|                 |   | View Miscellaneous Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv    |
|                 |   | View System Calculated Totals<br>Value Priv            |
|                 |   | View Store Day Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv        |
|                 |   | View Balance Level Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv    |
|                 |   | View Over/Short Totals Trial<br>Over/Short Values Priv |
| Finance Manager | Store Day Inquiry Duty  | Search Store Days Priv                                 |
|                 | Transaction Inquiry Duty  | View Store Day Priv                                    |
|                 | GL Management Duty  | View Flash Reports Priv                                |
|                 | Bank Store Management Duty  | Search Transactions Priv                               |
|                 | Total Definition Management   | View Transactions Priv                                 |
|                 | Duty  | View Transaction Reports Priv                          |
|                 | Total Definition Submit Duty  | Maintain ReSA Admin Data Priv                          |
|                 | Total Definition Review Duty  | View ReSA Admin Data Priv                              |
|                 | ACH Information Inquiry Duty  | View GL Drill Back Priv                                |
|                 | Audit Rule Inquiry Duty   | Maintain Bank Store Priv                               |
|                 | Error Override Review Duty Totals HQ Reported Value Review Duty Totals System Reported Value Review Duty Over/Short Value Review Duty | View Bank Store Priv                                   |
|                 |   | Search Total Definition Priv                           |
|                 |   | View Total Definition Priv                             |
|                 |   | Maintain Total Definition Priv                         |
|                 |   | Delete Total Definition Priv                           |
|                 |   | Submit Total Definition Priv                           |
|                 |   | Approve Total Definition Priv                          |
|                 |   | Disable Total Definition Priv                          |
|                 |   | View ACH Information Priv                              |
|                 |   | View Audit Rules Priv                                  |
|                 |   | View Error Override Priv                               |
|                 |   | View Over/Short Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv       |
|                 |   | View Miscellaneous Totals HQ<br>Reported Value Priv    |
|                 |   | View System Calculated Totals<br>Value Priv            |
|                 |   | View Store Day Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv        |
|                 |   | View Balance Level Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv    |
|                 |   | View Over/Short Totals Trial<br>Over/Short Values Priv |

Table 13–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Duty                                | Description   | List of Privileges                              |  |
|-------------------------------------|---|---|--|
| Sales Audit System<br>Administrator | Store Day Inquiry Duty  | Search Store Days Priv                          |  |
|                                     | Store Day Management Duty   | Maintain Store Days Priv                        |  |
|                                     | Store Day Manual Status Update  | Delete Store Day Priv                           |  |
|                                     | Duty  | View Store Day Priv                             |  |
|                                     | Transaction Inquiry Duty  | Manually Set Store Day Data                     |  |
|                                     | Transaction Management Duty   | Status Priv                                     |  |
|                                     | Transaction Post Void Duty  | Reset Store Day Audit Status Priv               |  |
|                                     | Inquiry Duty  Application Administration  | Search Transactions Priv                        |  |
|                                     |   | Maintain Transactions Priv                      |  |
|                                     | Management Duty   | Delete Transactions Priv                        |  |
|                                     | Total Definition Inquiry Duty   | View Transactions Priv                          |  |
|                                     | Total Definition Management   | View Employees Priv                             |  |
|                                     | Duty  | Post Void Transactions Priv                     |  |
|                                     | Total Definition Submit Duty Total Definition Review Duty   | Maintain Application Administration Priv        |  |
|                                     | Audit Rule Inquiry Duty   | Application Administration Priv                 |  |
|                                     | Audit Rule Management Duty  | Total Definition Priv                           |  |
|                                     | Audit Rule Submit Duty  | Maintain Total Definition Priv                  |  |
|                                     | Audit Rule Review Duty  | Submit Total Definition Priv                    |  |
|                                     | ACH Information Inquiry Duty ACH Information Management Duty ReSA Admin Data Management Duty Bank Store Inquiry Duty Bank Store Management Duty | Approve Total Definition Priv                   |  |
|                                     |   | Disable Total Definition Priv                   |  |
|                                     |   | Delete Total Definition Priv                    |  |
|                                     |   | Total Definition Priv                           |  |
|                                     |   | Audit Rule Priv<br>Maintain Audit Rule Priv     |  |
|                                     |   |   |  |
|                                     |   | Submit Audit Rule Priv                          |  |
|                                     | Employee Inquiry Duty   | Approve Audit Rule Priv                         |  |
|                                     | Employee Management Duty  | Disable Audit Rule Priv                         |  |
|                                     | Error Override Review Duty  | Delete Audit Rule Priv                          |  |
|                                     | Error Override Management<br>Duty   | Audit Rule Priv                                 |  |
|                                     | Totals HQ Reported Value  | Maintain ACH Information Priv                   |  |
|                                     | Review Duty   | View ACH Information Priv                       |  |
|                                     | Over/Short Value Review Duty  | Maintain ReSA Admin Data Priv                   |  |
|                                     | Totals System Reported Value  | View ReSA Admin Data Priv                       |  |
|                                     | Review Duty   | View GL Drill Back Priv                         |  |
|                                     |   | Maintain Bank Store Priv                        |  |
|                                     |   | View Bank Store Priv                            |  |
|                                     |   | Maintain Employees Priv                         |  |
|                                     |   | View Employees Priv                             |  |
|                                     |   | Maintain Error Override Priv                    |  |
|                                     |   | View Error Override Priv                        |  |
|                                     |   | View Store Day Summary<br>Over/Short Value Priv |  |

Table 13–4 Function Security Mapping (Cont.)

| Duty | Description | List of Privileges  |
|------|-------------|---|
| Duty | Description | View Balance Level Summary Over/Short Value Priv View Over/Short Totals Trial Over/Short Values Priv Maintain Over/Short Totals HQ Reported Value Priv View Over/Short Totals HQ Reported Value Priv Maintain Miscellaneous Totals HQ Reported Value Priv View Miscellaneous Totals HQ Reported Value Priv View Miscellaneous Totals HQ Reported Value Priv View System Calculated Totals |
|      |             | Value Priv<br>View Flash Reports Priv<br>View Transaction Reports Priv<br>View All Reports Priv<br>GL Inquiry Duty  |

Table 13–5 Role to Task Mapping

|                       |                            | Role                       |                                      |                              |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Column<br>Name        | Sales Auditor              | Sales Auditor<br>Manager   | Finance<br>Manager                   | Administrator                |
| Main Navigation Tasks | Store Day Audit            | Store Day Audit            | Store Day Audit<br>(View Only)       | Foundation Data Loading  All |
|                       | Create<br>Transaction      | Create<br>Transaction      | Manage<br>Transaction<br>(View Only) | System Options               |
|                       | Manage<br>Transactions     | Manage<br>Transactions     | Foundation Data Loading  All         | RMS Company<br>Closing       |
|                       | Bank ACH                   | Bank ACH                   | Create Total<br>Definition           | Employees                    |
|                       | Store ACH                  | Store ACH                  | Manage Total<br>Definition           | Bank Store                   |
|                       | Total Audit Trail          | Total Audit Trail          | Bank Store                           |                              |
|                       | Transaction<br>Audit Trail | Transaction<br>Audit Trail | Bank ACH<br>(View Only)              |                              |
|                       | Item Summary               | Item Summary               | Store ACH<br>(View Only)             |                              |
|                       | Tender<br>Summary          | Tender<br>Summary          | General Ledger<br>Drill Back         |                              |
|                       | Create Audit<br>Rule       | Create Audit<br>Rule       | Manage Audit<br>Rule (View<br>Only)  |                              |

Table 13-5 (Cont.) Role to Task Mapping

|                |  | Role   |  |               |
|----------------|--|--|--|---------------|
| Column<br>Name | Sales Auditor  | Sales Auditor<br>Manager   | Finance<br>Manager   | Administrator |
|                | Manage Audit<br>Rule   | Manage Audit<br>Rule   | View Reports  Flash Totals  Flash Sales  Credit Card Summary  Voucher Activity |               |
|                | Create Total<br>Definitions  | Create Total<br>Definitions  |  |               |
|                | Manage Total<br>Definitions  | Manage Total<br>Definitions  |  |               |
|                | View Reports  Flash Totals  Flash Sales  Credit Card Summary  Voucher Activity | RMS Company<br>Closing   |  |               |
|                |  | Employees  |  |               |
|                |  | Foundation Data Loading  All   |  |               |
|                |  | View Reports  Flash Totals  Flash Sales  Credit Card Summary  Voucher Activity |  |               |

### **Data Security**

Data security can be set up to limit visibility to data within the merchandise and organizational Hierarchies. In ReSA, only data security on the organizational hierarchy is used. ReSA users have access to all items in the merchandise hierarchy, but can only see data for stores to which they have data authorization based on this data security setup in RMS.

For more information on the Data security, see Security Features of the Application section under Chapter 10.

ReSA uses the application logged in LDAP ID. The logged in application user ID is copied to database session context RETAIL\_CTX. APP\_USER\_ID. The RMS security table SEC\_USER holds the application user ID and the database user ID. The data security function uses the application user ID for applying the security policy if database session context RETAIL\_CTX. APP\_USER\_ID is available else, it uses the logged in database ID for applying security policy.

### Securing ReSA Tables

When setting up RMS database roles and privileges, it is important to consider that roles with access to the RMS schema also have access to sensitive ReSA data. The ReSA tables listed in Table 13-6 contain sensitive information, including bank account information. ReSA resides in the same database as RMS and other MOM products, so it may be required to secure the ReSA tables so that unauthorized users do not access/modify the data in the ReSA tables. This access can be secured by using the database roles and privileges. Caution is advised when applying duplicate ReSA application login rules and/or privileges to non-ReSA users, as the sensitive data in the below tables will be accessible to these users.

Additionally, the following ReSA tables should be protected via an encrypted tablespace. For more information on setting up an encrypted tablespace, see Chapter 2 Creating an Encrypted Tablespace in Oracle 12c Container Database section.

Due to the sensitive nature of the data in these ReSA tables, any new custom applications used by the retailer must be fully tested for SQL injection vulnerabilities, especially if the applications have full access to the RMS schema.

It is recommended that access to these tables is audited by the retailer. Oracle RMS and ReSA are the only Oracle-supplied software that have access to these tables. Batch programs that access these tables can be found in the Oracle Retail Sales Audit Operations Guide. If sensitive data in these tables is not used by the retailer, it is recommended that this data is removed from the tables.

Table 13-6 ReSA Tables

| User Name          |
|--------------------|
| SA_TRAN_TENDER_REV |
| SA_BANK_ACH        |
| SA_TRAN_TENDER     |
| SA_BANK_STORE      |
| SA_CUSTOMER        |

One other additional recommended security measure is for retailers to ensure that credit card numbers are not sent in to ReSA through the RTLOG files. The credit card number field in the TTEND record should be sent in as NULL.

## Credit Card Information and Check Account Number Information **Processing**

The Credit card information and check account number information processing has changed for ReSA version 16.0. In previous releases when ReSA receives an RTLOG with a non-masked credit card number, it simply logs an error in the system and continues with the processing.

With version 16.0, when ReSA encounters an RTLOG with a non-masked credit card number, the entire file will be rejected and will not be processed. To adhere to this security measure, it is recommended that retailers ensure that credit card numbers are masked when sent through RTLOGs.

Similarly, when the tender type is check, it is recommended that retailers ensure that check account numbers are masked when sent through RTLOGs. In version 16.0, when non-masked check account numbers are encountered, the entire file will be rejected and will not be processed.

For more information on Merch Mobile Security Consideration, see the ReST Services Security Consideration chapter.

For more information on the ReST Services Security Consideration, see the Oracle Retail Sales Audit Operations Guide.

#### ReSTful Web Services

Services are secured using J2EE-based security model.

- 1. Realm-based User Authentication. This verifies users through an underlying realm. The username and password is passed using Http Basic authentication.
- 2. Role-based Authorization. This assigns users to roles, which in turn are granted or restricted access to resources/services. The authorization of ReSTful web services is static and cannot be reassigned to other rules post installation. The following role(s) is/are associated with ReSTful Web Services and should be added to the Enterprise LDAP:
  - ADMINISTRATOR\_JOB
  - AUDITOR\_JOB
  - AUDITOR\_MANAGER\_JOB
  - FINANCE\_MANAGER\_JOB

All enterprise roles defined above are mapped in web.xml and weblogic.xml of the ReST Service webapp.

The communication between the server and client is encrypted using one way SSL. In non-SSL environments the encoding defaults to BASE-64 so it is highly recommended that these ReST services are configured to be used in production environments secured with SSL connections.

For information on secure implementation of ReSTful services, see the ReSA Implementation Guide.

| Prodit Card Information | and Chack Assount | Number Information | Drococina  |
|-------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|------------|
| Credit Card Information | and Check Account | number mormanon    | Processing |

# Part IV

## Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM)

The following chapters provide guidance for administrators, developers, and system integrators who securely administer, customize, and integrate the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM) application.

Part IV contains the following chapters:

- General Security Considerations
- Understanding Security
- Post Installation ReIM Application Administration
- Extending/Customization
- Securing the Database

## **General Security Considerations**

This chapter discusses how to securely install the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching (ReIM) application. To obtain a secure configuration, follow the instructions and advice provided below.

The ReIM application is installed on a managed server, but is used in the distributed environment. Both client and server security should be taken into consideration when hardening application deployment. You need to reference your desktop and server operation system security guides, if available for more information on reinforcing security for the execution environment.

In particular, only valid users should have access to the client workstations running clients for the application. The reasonable locking policy should be established to lock out computer screens after some time of inactivity. The Security policy should be established at the desktop level to monitor unsuccessful login attempts. The System administrator should guarantee that the operation system has the latest mandatory update patches.

You should use only the supported browsers to access the application. The browsers should be patched with all the mandatory security updates dictated by the browser's vendor. The browser's auto-complete feature should be disabled by the system administrator. It is advised to add the server ReIM is deployed at to the list of sites for Local Intranet in the Web browser. The browser should be allowed to open pop-ups initiated by the Invoice Matching application. In addition, the browser should allow submitting non-encrypted form data.

For more information on how to secure the internal network used to access Invoice Matching server(s), see the Network Security Configuration Guide. This should include both physical and logical security of the network. Only SSL enabled communication should be used. Please make sure that browsers have certificates verification turned

Only the desktops on the intranet should be allowed to access the application server. The best approach is to limit the set of client computers on the network that can access the application server. That can be done at the network level to prevent guest users on the local network from even seeing the application server. In addition, the server can be configured to serve requests from the specified set of network addresses.

Only system administrators should have access to the application server(s). Business users (even power users) should not an account on the application server. If such accounts do exist, the OS account privileges should prevent business user from accessing application server files/directories associated with the Invoice Matching application.

The users running batches should never be OS system administrators or WebLogic administrator. The best approach is to have a single dedicated user for running

batches, rather than having multiple users running batches ad hoc. The user running batches should have ReIM application administrator privileges. The user should be setup with access to all locations (see location Security section below).

Only authorized users should be able to upload/download files consumed/produced by the Invoice Matching application. The directory structure for incoming EDI files should be accessible to the OS user running batches as read-only. It is recommended to keep outbound files in a separate directory. The outbound files directory should allow write access. It is also recommended to have separate write accessible directories for rejected files and for audit files. Please note that the system maintains the reference to the locations of the intended loads rejection and will attempt o write to that location at the later load retries. As such, the locations should be accessible for writing even after initial load attempt.

Management of spreadsheet files on client's workstations for the document upload and rejection download processes should be done securely. As rejection data files can be downloaded by a user different than the once that supplied the files for upload, care should be taken to control file access. Users triggering the upload process should be responsible for the files getting uploaded.

It is recommended to keep audit copies of any processed files and it is up to the retailer to provide this process. Audit copies should be created prior to supplying the files for ReIM processing. The files can be kept in an audit directory or using any other appropriate document management system that would allow easy retrieval later on.

**Note:** ReIM processes files that have been supplied by vendors or that have been supplied by RMS. Secure file transfer should be deployed in both cases.

It is also recommended to keep copies of the physical documents sent by vendors and manually entered into the system via the Document Entry screen, so that potential data integrity issues related to data entry can be resolved.

## **Understanding Security**

This chapter provides an overview of all the security features available in the ReIM application. It is provided as a reference for how the application securely communicates with other applications; how the application authenticates, authorizes, and audits users; and the encryption and hashing mechanisms used by the application.

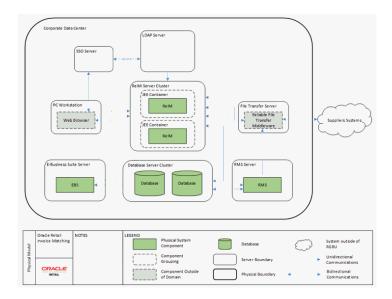
The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Security Features Overview
- **Dependent Applications**
- Technical Overview of the Security Features
- ReIM Web Application Deployment
- Security Features of the Application
- **Encryption and Hashing**

## **Security Features Overview**

Figure 15–1 shows the physical deployment of ReIM.

Figure 15-1 RelM Physical Deployment



The Application Server is deployed on the corporate intranet on WebLogic cluster. The Application Server is connected to a cluster of Oracle databases and a corporate LDAP server or any other authentication provider. Optionally Single Sign-On infrastructure can be deployed. In addition, a secure FTP server is responsible for transferring files in/out of the application if EDI functionality is used. Optionally 3rd party batch running infrastructure can be deployed to run batch scripts (for example, Appworx, and so on). The client workstation can be either at the corporate data center or at the retailer locations (stores and warehouses). The client workstations need to run supported browsers with optionally printers attached. For file processing batches such as EDIInjector, the files should be on the network location accessible by the server.

The WebLogic Application Server executes the server side of the application logic. Oracle Database provides data handling functionality. A configured LDAP server can provide authentication or any other authentication provider can be used. Single Sign-On infrastructure provides capability to share authentication tokens across multiple retail applications. FTP server provides delivery for EDI files. Workstation browsers can be used to execute client side application logic. Printers can be used to create physical outbound documents when EDI functionality is not used.

ReIM exchanges data with other retail applications that are part of the Oracle Retail Suite, such as RMS, and with the applications that are not part of Oracle Retail Suite, such as Enterprise Business Suite (EBS) and PeopleSoft.

Each component of the deployment should be secured to provide minimum required access. This includes OS security, network security, browser security, LDAP security, WebLogic security, database Security, and FTP server security. For information on how to secure each component, see the reference documentation.

### **Dependent Applications**

Security Guides for dependent applications are found at the following Web sites:

- Oracle Database 12 C Release 1: http://docs.oracle.com/database/121/DBSEG/toc.htm
- Oracle WebLogic 12.2.1: http://docs.oracle.com/middleware/1221/wls/INTRO/security.htm#INTRO232 Contact your vendor for other components of security guides.

### **RelM Web Application Deployment**

#### SSL

The ReIM application should be deployed using a secure HTTP endpoint, but at the same ime regular HTTP can be used (although this is not advised). The secure application should only be available through an "https" protocol. This requires the associated Oracle HTTP Server to be configured appropriately and to register the secure endpoint with the Single Sign-On Server. Configuration of the WebLogic hosting ReIM application should be secured as per WebLogic documentation.

#### Single Sign-On

In the standard supported deployment, ReIM leverages Single Sign-On infrastructure for authentication (optional). To avoid clear-text transmission of user IDs and passwords, Single Sign-On infrastructure must be configured to user TLS/SSL within all offered URLs. For specific information on configuring Single Sign-On to use TLS/SSL, see the WebLogic Single Sign-On Administrator's Guide.

#### WebLogic Wallet

The ReIM application relies on WebLogic Application Server to provide secure storage and retrieval for username and passwords required to communicate with other security conscious components or to run batches. WebLogic stores data securely in Credential Store, where a Wallet is one of the possible implementations. Credential Store stores access credentials for Web services access on the server and Secure Wallet implementation of Credential Store is used on the client to store batch user credentials.

## **Technical Overview of the Security Features**

The following section describes the authentication, authorization, audit, and user management.

### **Security Features of the Application**

The relevant security features fall into one or more of the following categories. For information on these categories, see the following sections:

- Authentication
- Authorization
- Audit
- User Management

#### Authentication

Only authenticated users should have access to ReIM application. By the point of application authentication the user potentially successfully authenticates with the network and/or the workstation OS.

ReIM supports the following two types of authentication:

- Dedicated
- Single Sign-On

Dedicated authentication - User credentials (username and password) are submitted by the Application Server to the LDAP server or any other configured authentication provider If the authentication provider can successfully identify the user then that user is considered authenticated with the ReIM application. Dedicated authentication credentials are either provided by the online application user in real time (entering user name and password on the ReIM provided login page) or are retrieved by the client from the Secure Wallet in the case of batch process. The batch user still needs to provide credentials alias, so that the appropriate username and passwords is retrieved from the Secure Wallet.

**Single Sign-On authentication** - In case of Single Sign-On, authentication happens only once per application suite. Authentication is performed by Single Sign-On infrastructure (potentially backed by the same LDAP server as the case for dedicated authentication). In this case login page is provided by the Single Sign-On infrastructure.

In both cases of authentication, the authentication is performed when it is determined that the session is not authenticated or the session has been invalidated (in case of dedicated authentication).

#### **Authorization**

Only application users that belong to one of the ReIM user roles will be authorized to use functionality provided by the ReIM application. If the user is a valid enterprise user, login may be successful but authorization may prevent access to specific workflows based on the user's assigned role. Authorization is performed for each user driven operation. It is assumed that the batch user is assigned to the administrator role which is authorized to perform all operations.

#### Audit

Auditing can be performed at the application level and at the infrastructure level. The operating system (OS) can be configured to audit user access and processes invoked. The network layer can be configured to audit entire communication data set. The application server can be configured to audit access to the application, including all URLs requested. The database can be configured to audit each table separately or entire sessions. The ReIM application also has some limited auditing capabilities.

The application will maintain some level of audit trail by keeping track of the last user modifying data and the date and time it was done, as well as version id of the data. See LAST\_UPDATED\_BY.

- LAST\_UPDATED\_BY
- LAST\_UPDATE\_DATE
- CREATED BY
- CREATION DATE
- OBJECT\_VERSION\_ID

Additional audit can be performed by decreasing logging level of the application. In this case additional information is reported into logs. The drawback is that performance can suffer and that amount of log entries to be recorded will increase. You can selectively decrease logging (see Log4J and Java Logging documentation on logging configuration for more information). Also make sure that the log files generated by the application are secure and are accessible to authorized OS users only.

#### User Management

The ReIM application does not store or maintains users. Instead, ReIM relies on external systems such as LDAP to provide user management functionality on its behalf.

To create a new user to be used within the ReIM application, you need to create a new user in the LDAP or whatever data store the configured authentication provider relies on. To access ReIM workflows, the user should be assigned to a valid ReIM user role. If RMS data security is enabled, users must be added to the SEC\_USER table and have REIM\_USER\_IND enabled. The user must also be mapped to a valid RMS security group in the SEC\_USER\_GROUP table.

**Note:** When removing a user, you must also delete the user entries from the RMS security tables. Failure to do this could result in inherited privileges.

## **Encryption and Hashing**

JPS encrypts data stored into the Secure Wallet. For more information on the default encryption algorithm used, see the *Credential Store Manager* section in WebLogic documentation.

## Post Installation - RelM Application Administration

This chapter provides information about application administrative tasks related to security. How to manage users and roles as well as some other common application administrative tasks such as secure credential management and logging are discussed.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Roles and Permissions
- Other Common Application Administration

### **Roles and Permissions**

ReIM has several predefined application roles:

- Accounts Payable Specialist
- Finance Manager
- Buyer
- Corporate Inventory Control Analyst
- **ReIM Application Administrator**

These application roles are predefined in the application's security descriptors and users are mapped from their respective enterprise roles through the configured WebLogic Security Providers. Typically, the deployment will use Oracle Internet Directory as the Security Provider and enterprise roles will exist as user groups in the LDAP. By default, WebLogic maps enterprise roles to application roles of the same name. Therefore, any LDAP users that should be considered for ReIM processing should be made a member of one of these groups.

As the name suggests, the Application Administrator role has the highest level of privileges whereas all other user roles will have a predefined subset of privileges. Avoid assigning all users to the Application Administrator role. This will grant users more privileges than is required.

The privileges and duties that comprise ReIM's application roles are as follows:

Table 16–1 Privileges

| Name                                  | Description   |  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Search Documents Priv                 | A privilege for searching for documents.  |  |
| Maintain Documents Priv               | A privilege for creating and editing documents.                                     |  |
| Delete Documents Priv                 | A privilege for deleting documents.   |  |
| View Documents Priv                   | A privilege for viewing documents.  |  |
| Pay Invoice Manually Priv             | A privilege to allow user to pay an invoice before matching the invoice.            |  |
| EDI Maintenance Priv                  | A privilege for allowing a user to fix EDI errors.                                  |  |
| Reverse Debit Memo Priv               | A privilege for allowing a user to reverse a Debit Memo.                            |  |
| Create Credit Note from CNR Priv      | A privilege for allowing a user to create a credit note from a credit note request. |  |
| Void Credit Note Priv                 | A privilege for allowing a user to void a credit note.                              |  |
| Approve Document Priv                 | A privilege to approve documents.   |  |
| Unmatch Priv                          | A privilege for allowing a user to unmatch a merchandise invoice.                   |  |
| Upload Documents Priv                 | A privilege for allowing a user to upload documents.                                |  |
| Search Financal Posting Error Priv    | A privilege for searching for financial posting errors.                             |  |
| Maintain Financial Posting Error Priv | A privilege for editing financial posting errors.                                   |  |
| View Financial Posting Error Priv     | A privilege for viewing financial posting errors.                                   |  |
| Search Tolerance Priv                 | A privilege for searching for tolerance settings.                                   |  |
| Maintain Tolerance Priv               | A privilege for creating and editing tolerance settings.                            |  |
| Delete Tolerance Priv                 | A privilege for deleting a tolerance setting.                                       |  |
| View Tolerance Priv                   | A privilege for viewing for tolerance settings.                                     |  |
| Search Tolerance Mapping Priv         | A privilege for searching for tolerance mapping settings.                           |  |
| Maintain Tolerance Mapping Priv       | A privilege for creating and editing tolerance mapping settings.                    |  |
| Delete Tolerance Mapping Priv         | A privilege for deleting a tolerance mapping settings.                              |  |
| View Tolerance Mapping Priv           | A privilege for viewing for tolerance mapping settings.                             |  |
| Search Match Strategy Priv            | A privilege for searching for Match Strategy settings.                              |  |
| Maintain Match Strategy Priv          | A privilege for creating and editing Match Strategy settings.                       |  |
| Delete Match Strategy Priv            | A privilege for deleting a Match Strategy settings.                                 |  |

Table 16–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name                                 | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| View Match Strategy Priv             | A privilege for viewing for Match Strategy settings.                  |
| Search Match Strategy Mapping Priv   | A privilege for searching for Match Strategy mapping settings.        |
| Maintain Match Strategy Mapping Priv | A privilege for creating and editing Match Strategy mapping settings. |
| Delete Match Strategy Mapping Priv   | A privilege for deleting a Match Strategy mapping setting.            |
| View Match Strategy Mapping Priv     | A privilege for viewing for Match Strategy mapping settings.          |
| Search G/L Cross Reference Priv      | A privilege for searching for G/L Cross Reference settings.           |
| Maintain G/L Cross Reference Priv    | A privilege for creating and editing t G/L Cross Reference settings.  |
| Delete G/L Cross Reference Priv      | A privilege for deleting a G/L Cross Reference setting.               |
| View G/L Cross Reference Priv        | A privilege for viewing for G/L Cross Reference settings.             |
| Search Reason Code Priv              | A privilege for searching for Reason Code settings.                   |
| Maintain Reason Code Priv            | A privilege for creating and editing Reason Code settings.            |
| Delete Reason Code Priv              | A privilege for deleting a Reason Code setting.                       |
| View Reason Code Priv                | A privilege for viewing for Reason Code settings.                     |
| Search G/L Options Priv              | A privilege for searching for G/L Options settings.                   |
| Maintain G/L Options Priv            | A privilege for creating and editing G/L Options settings.            |
| Delete G/L Options Priv              | A privilege for deleting a G/L Options settings.                      |
| View G/L Options Priv                | A privilege for viewing for G/L Options settings.                     |
| Maintain System Options Priv         | A privilege for creating and editing System Options settings.         |
| Delete System Options Priv           | A privilege for deleting a System Options setting.                    |
| View System Options Priv             | A privilege for viewing for System Options settings.                  |
| Search Supplier Options Priv         | A privilege for searching for Supplier Options settings.              |
| Maintain Supplier Options Priv       | A privilege for creating and editing Supplier Options settings.       |
| Delete Supplier Options Priv         | A privilege for deleting a Supplier Options setting.                  |
| View Supplier Options Priv           | A privilege for viewing for Supplier Options settings.                |
| Search Location Dynamic Mapping Priv | A privilege for searching for Location Dynamic Mapping settings.      |

Table 16–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Maintain Location Dynamic Mapping Priv      | A privilege for creating and editing Location<br>Dynamic Mapping settings.                    |
| Delete Location Dynamic Mapping Priv        | A privilege for deleting a Location Dynamic Mapping setting.                                  |
| View Location Dynamic Mapping Priv          | A privilege for viewing for Location Dynamic Mapping settings.                                |
| Search Dept Class Dynamic Mapping Priv      | A privilege for searching for Dept Class Dynamic Mapping settings.                            |
| Maintain Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Priv | A privilege for creating and editing Dept Class<br>Dynamic Mapping settings.                  |
| Delete Dept Class Dynamic Mapping Priv      | A privilege for deleting a Dept Class Dynamic Mapping settings.                               |
| View Dept Class Dynamic Mapping Priv        | A privilege for viewing for Dept Class Dynamic Mapping settings.                              |
| Search Manual Match Priv                    | A privilege to allow a user search for invoices and receipts to be manually matched.          |
| Manual Match Priv                           | A privilege to allow a user to match an invoice manually through the UI.                      |
| Search Credit Note Match Priv               | A privilege to allow a user to search for Credit Notes to Credit Note Requests to be matched. |
| Credit Note Match Priv                      | A privilege to match Credit Notes to Credit Note Requests.                                    |
| Search Discrepancy List Priv                | A privilege to search for Discrepancies.  |
| Cost Resolution Priv                        | A privilege to allow a cost discrepancy to be resolved.                                       |
| Quantity Resolution Priv                    | A privilege to allow a quantity discrepancy to be resolved.                                   |
| Search Tax Discrepancy List Priv            | A privilege to search for Tax Discrepancies.  |
| Tax Discrepancy Resolution Priv             | A privilege to allow a tax discrepancy to be resolved.  |
| Dashboard Priv                              | A privilege for viewing the dashboard.  |

Table 16–2 Duties

| Duty                        | Description                                    | List of Privileges                                      |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| Document<br>Management Duty | A Duty for managing documents. This duty is an | - All privileges found in the<br>Document Inquiry Duty. |
|                             | extension of the Document Inquiry Duty.        | - Maintain Documents Priv.                              |
|                             | niquity Duty.                                  | - Delete Documents Priv.                                |
| Document Inquiry            | A duty for viewing documents.                  | - View Documents Priv.                                  |
| Duty                        |  | - Search Documents Priv.                                |
| Pay Invoice Duty            | A duty for paying an invoice manually.         | Pay Invoice Manually Priv.                              |
| EDI Maintenance<br>Duty     | A duty for fixing EDI Errors.                  | EDI Maintenance Priv.                                   |

Table 16–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty  | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|---|--|---|
| Reverse Debit Memo<br>Duty                            | A duty to allow user to reverse a Credit Note.   | Reverse Debit Memo Priv.  |
| Create Credit Note<br>from CNR Duty                   | A duty to allow user to create a<br>Credit Note from a Credit Note<br>Request.                   | Create Credit Note from CNR<br>Priv.                              |
| Void Credit Note Duty                                 | A duty for voiding a Credit<br>Note.   | Void Credit Note Priv.  |
| Approve Document<br>Duty                              | A duty for approving documents.  | Approve Document Priv.  |
| Unmatch Duty  | A duty for unmatching a merchandise invoice.   | Unmatch Priv.   |
| Upload Duty   | A duty for uploading documents.  | Unload Documents Priv.  |
| Financial Posting<br>Error Duty                       | A Duty for managing Financial<br>Posting Errors. This duty is an<br>extension of the Financial   | All privileges found in the Financial Posting Error Inquiry Duty. |
|   | Posting Errors Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Financial Posting Error Priv.                            |
| Financial Posting                                     | A duty for viewing Financial Posting Errors.   | View Financial Posting Error Priv.                                |
| Error Inquiry Duty                                    |  | Search Financial Posting Error<br>Priv.                           |
| Tolerance<br>Maintenance Duty                         | A Duty for managing Tolerance settings. This duty is an extension of the Tolerance Inquiry Duty. | - All privileges found in the<br>Tolerance Inquiry Duty.          |
|   |  | -Maintain Tolerance Priv.   |
|   |  | -Delete Tolerance Priv.   |
|   |  | -Maintain Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                              |
|   |  | -Delete Tolerance Mapping Priv.                                   |
| Tolerance Inquiry                                     | A duty for viewing Tolerance   | -View Tolerance Priv.   |
| Duty  | settings.  | -View Tolerance Mapping Priv.                                     |
|   |  | -Search Tolerance Priv.   |
|   |  | -Search Tolerance Mapping Priv.                                   |
| Match Strategy<br>Maintenance Duty                    | A Duty for managing Match<br>Strategy settings. This duty is an                                  | -All privileges found in the Match<br>Strategy Inquiry Duty.      |
|   | extension of the Match Strategy<br>Inquiry Duty  | -Maintain Match Strategy Priv.                                    |
|   | inquity Buty   | -Delete Match Strategy Priv.                                      |
|   |  | -Maintain Match Strategy<br>Mapping Priv.                         |
|   |  | -Delete Match Strategy Mapping<br>Priv.                           |
| G/L Cross Reference<br>Maintenance Duty               | A Duty for managing G/L Cross Reference settings. This duty is                                   | -All privileges found in the G/L<br>Cross Reference Inquiry Duty. |
| an extension of the G/L Cre<br>Reference Inquiry Duty | an extension of the G/L Cross<br>Reference Inquiry Duty  | Maintain G/L Cross Reference Priv.                                |
|   |  | -Delete G/L Cross Reference Priv.                                 |

Table 16–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty  | Description  | List of Privileges  |
|---|--|---|
| G/L Cross Reference                                   | A duty for viewing G/L Cross   | -View G/L Cross Reference Priv.   |
| Inquiry Duty  | Reference settings   | Search G/L Cross Reference Priv   |
| Reason Code<br>Maintenance Duty                       | A Duty for managing Reason<br>Code settings. This duty is an   | -All privileges found in the<br>Reason Code Inquiry Duty.                   |
|   | extension of the Reason Code<br>Inquiry Duty   | -Maintain Reason Code Priv.   |
|   | 1  | -Delete Reason Code Priv.   |
| Reason Code Inquiry                                   | A duty for viewing Reason Code   | -View Reason Code Priv.   |
| Duty  | settings   | -Search Reason Code Priv.   |
| G/L Options<br>Maintenance Duty                       | A Duty for managing G/L Options settings. This duty is an  | -All privileges found in the G/L Options Inquiry Duty.                      |
|   | extension of the G/L Options Inquiry Duty  | -Maintain G/L Options Priv.   |
|   | 1 7 7  | -Delete G/L Options Priv.   |
| G/L Options Inquiry                                   | A duty for viewing G/L Options   | -View G/L Options Priv.   |
| Duty  | settings   | -Search G/L Options Priv.   |
| System Options<br>Maintenance Duty                    | A Duty for managing System<br>Options settings. This duty is an  | -All privileges found in the<br>System Options Inquiry Duty.                |
|   | extension of the System Options<br>Inquiry Duty  | -Maintain System Options Priv.  |
|   | 1 7 7  | -Delete System Options Priv.  |
| System Options<br>Inquiry Duty                        | A duty for viewing System<br>Options settings  | View System Options Priv.   |
| Supplier Options<br>Maintenance Duty                  | A Duty for managing Supplier<br>Options settings. This duty is an<br>extension of the Supplier<br>Options Inquiry Duty | -All privileges found in the<br>Supplier Options Inquiry Duty.              |
|   |  | -Maintain Supplier Options Priv.  |
|   |  | -Delete Supplier Options Priv.  |
| Supplier Options                                      | A duty for viewing Supplier  | -View Supplier Options Priv.  |
| Inquiry Duty  | Options settings   | -Search Supplier Options Priv.  |
| Mapping Maintenance Dynamic M duty is an e Location D | A Duty for managing Location<br>Dynamic Mapping settings. This<br>duty is an extension of the                          | -All privileges found in the<br>Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty.   |
|   | Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty   | -Maintain Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|   |  | -Delete Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
| Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Inquiry                   | A duty for viewing Location<br>Dynamic Mapping settings  | -View Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                     |
| Duty  |  | -Search Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
| Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Maintenance<br>Duty     | A Duty for managing Dept Class<br>Dynamic Mapping settings. This<br>duty is an extension of the Dept                   | -All privileges found in the Dept<br>Class Dynamic Mapping Inquiry<br>Duty. |
|   | Class Dynamic Mapping Inquiry<br>Duty  | -Maintain Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                               |
|   |  | -Delete Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |

Table 16–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                  | Description  | List of Privileges                          |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Inquiry | A duty for viewing Dept Class<br>Dynamic Mapping settings  | -View Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.   |
| Duty                                  |  | -Search Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv. |
| Invoice Matching                      | A duty for manually matching                               | -Manually Match Priv.                       |
| Duty                                  | invoices   | -Search Manual Match Priv                   |
| Resolve Cost                          | A duty for resolving cost                                  | -Cost Discrepancy Priv                      |
| Discrepancies Duty                    | discrepancies  | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.              |
| Resolve Quantity Discrepancies Duty   | A duty for resolving quantity discrepancies                | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.                 |
|                                       |  | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.              |
| Resolve Discrepancies<br>Duty         | A duty for resolving either cost or quantity discrepancies | -Cost Discrepancy Priv.                     |
|                                       |  | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.                 |
|                                       |  | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.              |
| Credit Note Matching<br>Duty          | A duty for matching Credit<br>Notes                        | -Credit Note Match Priv.                    |
|                                       |  | -Search Credit Note Match Priv.             |
| Resolve Tax<br>Discrepancy Duty       | A duty for resolving tax discrepancies                     | -Tax Discrepancy Resolution Priv.           |
|                                       |  | -Search Tax Discrepancy List Priv.          |
| Dashboard Duty                        | A duty for viewing the dashboard                           | -Dashboard Priv.                            |

Table 16–3 Function Security Mapping

| Table 16–3                     | Function Security Mapping            |  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| Role                           | Duty                                 | Privileges   |
| Accounts Payable<br>Specialist | able Document Management Duty        | -All privileges found in the                               |
|                                | Pay Invoice Duty                     | Document Inquiry Duty.                                     |
|                                | EDI Maintenance Duty                 | -Maintain Documents Priv.                                  |
|                                | Reverse Debit Memo Duty              | -Delete Documents Priv.                                    |
|                                | Create Credit Note from CNR D        |  |
|                                | Void Credit Note Duty                | -EDI Maintenance Priv.                                     |
|                                | Approve Document Duty                | -Reverse Debit Memo Priv.                                  |
|                                | Tolerance Inquiry Duty               | -Create Credit Note from CNR<br>Priv.                      |
|                                | Match Strategy Inquiry Duty          | -Approve Document Priv.                                    |
|                                | G/L Cross Reference Inquiry D        |  |
|                                | Reason Code Inquiry Duty             | -View Tolerance Priv.                                      |
|                                | G/L Options Inquiry Duty             | -View Tolerance Mapping                                    |
|                                | System Options Inquiry Duty          | Priv.  |
|                                | Supplier Options Inquiry Duty        | -Search Tolerance Priv.                                    |
|                                | Location Dynamic Mapping Inc<br>Duty | quiry -Search Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                   |
|                                | Dept Class Dynamic Mapping           | -View Match Strategy Priv.                                 |
|                                | Inquiry Duty Invoice Matching Duty   | <ul><li>-View Match Strategy<br/>Mapping Priv.</li></ul>   |
|                                | Credit Note Matching Duty            | -Search Match Strategy Priv.                               |
|                                | Discrepancy Resolution Duty          | -Search Match Strategy                                     |
|                                | Resolve Tax Discrepancy Duty         | Mapping Priv.  |
|                                | Unmatch Duty                         | -View G/L Cross Reference<br>Priv.                         |
|                                | Upload Documents Duty                | -Search G/L Cross Reference                                |
|                                | Financial Posting Error Duty         | Priv.  |
|                                | Dashboard Duty                       | -View Reason Code Priv.                                    |
|                                |                                      | -Search Reason Code Priv.                                  |
|                                |                                      | -View G/L Options Priv.                                    |
|                                |                                      | -Search G/L Options Priv.                                  |
|                                |                                      | -View System Options Priv.                                 |
|                                |                                      | -Search System Options Priv.                               |
|                                |                                      | -View Supplier Options Priv.                               |
|                                |                                      | -Search Supplier Options Priv.                             |
|                                |                                      | <ul><li>-View Location Dynamic<br/>Mapping Priv.</li></ul> |
|                                |                                      | -Search Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                  |
|                                |                                      | -View Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                  |
|                                |                                      | -Search Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                |
|                                |                                      | -Manually Matching Priv.                                   |
|                                |                                      | -Cost Discrepancy Priv.                                    |
|                                |                                      | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.                                |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | Privileges                     |
|------|------|--------------------------------|
|      |      | -Credit Note Matching Priv.    |
|      |      | -Unmatch Priv.                 |
|      |      | -Upload documents Priv.        |
|      |      | -Financial Posting Error Priv. |
|      |      | Dashboard Priv.                |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role            | Duty   | Privileges  |
|-----------------|--|---|
| Finance Manager | Document Management Duty                     | -All privileges found in the                                      |
|                 | Pay Invoice Duty                             | Document Inquiry DutyMaintain Documents Priv.                     |
|                 | EDI Maintenance Duty                         | -Delete Documents Priv.   |
|                 | Reverse Debit Memo Duty                      | -Pay Invoice Manually Priv.                                       |
|                 | Create Credit Note from CNR Duty             | -EDI Maintenance Priv.  |
|                 | Void Credit Note Duty                        | -Reverse Debit Memo Priv.   |
|                 | Approve Document Duty                        | -Create Credit Note from CNR                                      |
|                 | Tolerance Maintenance Duty                   | Priv.   |
|                 | Match Strategy Maintenance Duty              | -Approve Document Priv.   |
|                 | G/L Cross Reference Maintenance<br>Duty      | -Void Credit Note Priv.   |
|                 | Reason Code Maintenance Duty                 | -All privileges found in the Tolerance Inquiry Duty.              |
|                 | G/L Options Maintenance Duty                 | -Maintain Tolerance Priv.   |
|                 | System Options Inquiry Duty                  | -Delete Tolerance Priv.   |
|                 | Supplier Options Maintenance Duty            |   |
|                 | Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Maintenance Duty | -Maintain Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                              |
|                 | Dept Class Dynamic Mapping Maintenance Duty  | -Delete Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                                |
|                 | Invoice Matching Duty                        | -All privileges found in the Match Strategy Inquiry Duty.         |
|                 | Credit Note Matching Duty                    | -Maintain Match Strategy Priv.                                    |
|                 | Discrepancy Resolution Duty                  | -Delete Match Strategy Priv.                                      |
|                 | Resolve Tax Discrepancy Duty                 | -All privileges found in the                                      |
|                 | Unmatch Duty                                 | G/L Cross Reference Inquiry Duty.                                 |
|                 | Upload Documents Duty                        | -Maintain G/L Cross   |
|                 | Financial Posting Error Duty                 | Reference Priv.   |
|                 | Dashboard Duty                               | -Delete G/L Cross Reference<br>Priv.                              |
|                 |  | -All privileges found in the Reason Code Inquiry Duty.            |
|                 |  | -Maintain Reason Code Priv.                                       |
|                 |  | -Delete Reason Code Priv.   |
|                 |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Options Inquiry Duty.            |
|                 |  | -Maintain G/L Options Priv.                                       |
|                 |  | -Delete G/L Options Priv.   |
|                 |  | All privileges found in the<br>System Options Inquiry Duty.       |
|                 |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Supplier Options Inquiry<br>Duty. |
|                 |  | -Maintain Supplier Options<br>Priv.                               |
|                 |  | -Delete Supplier Options Priv.                                    |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role                              | Duty                                | Privileges  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
|                                   |                                     | -All privileges found in the<br>Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Maintain Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|                                   |                                     | -Delete Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
|                                   |                                     | -All privileges found in the<br>Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty. |
|                                   |                                     | -Maintain Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                               |
|                                   |                                     | -Delete Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|                                   |                                     | -Manually Match Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Search Manual Match Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Credit Note Match Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Search Credit Note Match<br>Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Cost Discrepancy Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Tax Discrepancy Resolution Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Search Tax Discrepancy List Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Unmatch Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Upload documents Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -All privileges found In the Financial Posting Error Inquiry Duty.          |
|                                   |                                     | -Financial Posting Error Priv.  |
|                                   |                                     | -Dashboard Priv.  |
| Buyer                             | Resolve Cost Discrepancies Duty     | -Cost Discrepancy Priv.   |
|                                   |                                     | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.  |
| Corporate Inventory               | Resolve Quantity Discrepancies Duty | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.   |
| Control Analyst                   |                                     | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.  |
| ReIM Application<br>Administrator | All duties                          | -All privileges.  |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role              | Duty   | Privileges  |
|-------------------|--|---|
| Financial Analyst | Document Inquiry Duty  | -All privileges in  |
|                   | Pay Invoice Duty   | -Document Inquiry Duty.   |
|                   | Tolerance Inquiry Duty   | -All privileges in  |
|                   | Match Strategy Inquiry Duty  | -Tolerance Inquiry Duty.  |
|                   | G/L Cross Reference Inquiry Duty   | -All privileges found in the  |
|                   | Reason Code Inquiry Duty   | Match Strategy Inquiry Duty.  |
|                   | G/L Options Inquiry Duty   | -All privileges found in the G/L Cross Reference Inquiry                    |
|                   | System Options Inquiry Duty  | Duty.   |
|                   | Supplier Options Inquiry Duty  | -All privileges found in the  |
|                   | Location Dynamic Mapping Inquiry<br>Duty  Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty  Financial Posting Error Inquiry Duty | Reason Code Inquiry Duty.   |
|                   |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Options Inquiry Duty.                      |
|                   |  | -All privileges found in the  |
|                   |  | System Options Inquiry Duty.  |
|                   |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Supplier Options Inquiry<br>Duty.           |
|                   |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty.   |
|                   |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty. |
|                   |  | -All privileges found In the<br>Financial Posting Error<br>Inquiry Duty.    |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role                        | Duty   | Privileges  |
|-----------------------------|--|---|
| Accounts Payable<br>Manager | Document Management Duty                                   | -All privileges found in the<br>Document Inquiry Duty.            |
|                             | Pay Invoice Duty   | -Maintain Documents Priv.   |
|                             | EDI Maintenance Duty                                       | -Delete Documents Priv.   |
|                             | Reverse Debit Memo Duty                                    | -Pay Invoice Manually Priv.                                       |
|                             | Create Credit Note from CNR Duty                           | -EDI Maintenance Priv.  |
|                             | Approve Document Duty                                      | -Reverse Debit Memo Priv.   |
|                             | Void Credit Note Duty                                      | -Create Credit Note from CNR                                      |
|                             | Tolerance Maintenance Duty                                 | Priv.   |
|                             | Match Strategy Maintenance Duty                            | -Approve Document Priv.   |
|                             | G/L Cross Reference Maintenance<br>Duty                    | -Void Credit Note Priv.   |
|                             | Reason Code Maintenance Duty                               | -All privileges found in the Tolerance Inquiry Duty.              |
|                             | G/L Options Maintenance Duty                               | -Maintain Tolerance Priv.   |
|                             | System Options Inquiry Duty                                | -Delete Tolerance Priv.   |
|                             | Supplier Options Maintenance Duty Location Dynamic Mapping | -Maintain Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                              |
|                             | Maintenance Duty  Dept Class Dynamic Mapping               | -Delete Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.                                |
|                             | Maintenance Duty Invoice Matching Duty                     | -All privileges found in the Match Strategy Inquiry Duty.         |
|                             | Credit Note Matching Duty                                  | -Maintain Match Strategy Priv.                                    |
|                             | Discrepancy Resolution Duty                                | -Delete Match Strategy Priv.                                      |
|                             | Resolve Tax Discrepancy Duty                               | -Maintain Match Strategy  |
|                             | Unmatch Duty   | Mapping Priv.   |
|                             | Upload Documents Duty Financial Posting Error Duty         | -Delete Match Strategy<br>Mapping Priv.                           |
|                             |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Cross Reference Inquiry Duty.    |
|                             |  | -Maintain G/L Cross<br>Reference Priv.                            |
|                             |  | -Delete G/L Cross Reference<br>Priv.                              |
|                             |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Reason Code Inquiry Duty.         |
|                             |  | -Maintain Reason Code Priv  |
|                             |  | -Delete Reason Code Priv  |
|                             |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Options Inquiry Duty.            |
|                             |  | -Maintain G/L Options Priv  |
|                             |  | -Delete G/L Options Priv  |
|                             |  | -All privileges found in the System Options Inquiry Duty.         |
|                             |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Supplier Options Inquiry<br>Duty. |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | Privileges  |
|------|------|---|
|      |      | -Maintain Supplier Options<br>Priv.   |
|      |      | -Delete Supplier Options Priv.  |
|      |      | -All privileges found in the<br>Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty.   |
|      |      | -Maintain Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|      |      | -Delete Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
|      |      | -All privileges found in the<br>Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty. |
|      |      | -Maintain Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                               |
|      |      | -Delete Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|      |      | -Manually Match Priv.   |
|      |      | -Search Manual Match Priv.  |
|      |      | -Credit Note Match Priv.  |
|      |      | -Search Credit Note Match<br>Priv.  |
|      |      | -Cost Discrepancy Priv.   |
|      |      | -Quantity Discrepancy Priv.   |
|      |      | -Search Discrepancy List Priv.  |
|      |      | -Tax Discrepancy Resolution Priv.   |
|      |      | -Search Tax Discrepancy List<br>Priv.                                       |
|      |      | -Unmatch Priv.  |
|      |      | -Upload documents Priv.   |
|      |      | -All privileges found In the<br>Financial Posting Error<br>Inquiry Duty.    |
|      |      | -Financial Posting Error Priv.  |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role         | Duty   | Privileges  |
|--------------|--|---|
| Data Steward | Document Management Inquiry Duty             | -All privileges found in the Document Inquiry Duty.                       |
|              | EDI Maintenance Duty                         | -EDI Maintenance Priv.  |
|              | Tolerance Maintenance Duty                   | -All privileges found in the  |
|              | Match Strategy Maintenance Duty              | Tolerance Inquiry Duty.   |
|              | G/L Cross Reference Maintenance<br>Duty      | -Maintain Tolerance Priv.   |
|              | Reason Code Maintenance Duty                 | -Delete Tolerance Priv.   |
|              | G/L Options Maintenance Duty                 | -Maintain Tolerance Mapping   |
|              | System Options Maintenance Duty              | Priv.   |
|              | Supplier Options Maintenance Duty            | -Delete Tolerance Mapping<br>Priv.  |
|              | Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Maintenance Duty | -All privileges found in the<br>Match Strategy Inquiry Duty.              |
|              | Dept Class Dynamic Mapping                   | -Maintain Match Strategy Priv.  |
|              | Maintenance Duty                             | -Delete Match Strategy Priv.  |
|              | Upload Documents Duty                        | -Maintain Match Strategy  |
|              | Financial Posting Error Duty                 | Mapping Priv.   |
|              |  | -Delete Match Strategy<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Cross Reference Inquiry Duty.            |
|              |  | -Maintain G/L Cross<br>Reference Priv.                                    |
|              |  | -Delete G/L Cross Reference<br>Priv.                                      |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the Reason Code Inquiry Duty.                    |
|              |  | -Maintain Reason Code Priv.   |
|              |  | -Delete Reason Code Priv.   |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the G/L Options Inquiry Duty.                    |
|              |  | -Maintain G/L Options Priv  |
|              |  | -Delete G/L Options Priv  |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the<br>System Options Inquiry Duty.              |
|              |  | -Maintain System Options Priv   |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Supplier Options Inquiry<br>Duty.         |
|              |  | -Maintain Supplier Options<br>Priv.                                       |
|              |  | -Delete Supplier Options Priv.  |
|              |  | -All privileges found in the<br>Location Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty. |
|              |  | -Maintain Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                               |

Table 16–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role | Duty | Privileges  |
|------|------|---|
|      |      | -Delete Location Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                   |
|      |      | -All privileges found in the<br>Dept Class Dynamic Mapping<br>Inquiry Duty. |
|      |      | -Maintain Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                               |
|      |      | -Delete Dept Class Dynamic<br>Mapping Priv.                                 |
|      |      | -Upload documents Priv.   |
|      |      | -All privileges found In the<br>Financial Posting Error<br>Inquiry Duty.    |
|      |      | -Financial Posting Error Priv.  |

It is recommended that you implement LDAP policies to prevent reusing user names. This will prevent users from inheriting user role privileges. If other non-LDAP authentication provider is used then similar available mechanism should be deployed.

ReIM uses location criteria to limit the data set available for processing. Only the documents that are associated with the locations accessible to the user security group can be accessed by the user. ReIM uses RMS mechanism to associate location with the user group. See the RMS documentation for details on setting up location level security. It is important to note that if no locations have been defined for the user's group the use will have access to ALL location. At the same time if some locations have been assigned to the user's group then the user will have access just to those defined locations. Location security is used across the application, so all the workflows will adhere to the location restrictions, including batches. Because of this the batch user(s) should have access to ALL locations.

In addition to location security ReIM uses similar mechanism to restrict access to the reason codes and accordingly the resolution actions that the user can take. The access is defined manually via IM\_SEC\_GRP\_REASON\_CODE table. The table maintains mapping of the reason codes to the RMS security group. One difference of the reason code security from location security is that if no reason codes have been assigned to the user security group then no reason codes will be available for the user (no access by default). Reason code access needs to be explicitly granted to the user's security group.

#### Other Common Application Administration

As a part of the operational workflow, ReIM needs to have credential information to authenticate application users and to authenticate application itself with other dependent components such as Web Services. For the case of remote users connecting to ReIM servers through browsers, credentials are retrieved in real time through an online form. For all other cases the credentials are determined at installation and are stored in Secure Wallet by means of Credential Store Manager Component. At runtime the credentials are retrieved from the wallet and supplied to the component for authentication. The credentials can be updated if required. As part of installation ReIM provides convenience scripts that allow credential entries to be updated. The scripts allow the system administrator to see usernames stored in ReIM wallet partition and

to change the password if necessary. The script does not display original passwords. For more information, see the *Operations Guide*.

There are two sets of logs that are used by the ReIM application: Application and Batch client Execution Logs. The application logs are configured and maintained by Oracle Fusion Middleware Logging. Application log messages will be written to the server's diagnostic logs within the WebLogic directory structure. Such logs are owned by the OS users that own the WebLogic container. The logging level and other logging parameters can be adjusted through the Oracle Diagnostic Logging configuration as provided by Oracle Fusion Middleware. The batch client logs are not managed by Oracle Fusion Middleware and the logging level and other configurations are controlled through the Log4J properties within the batch client distribution. The default log path is the same directory as the batch client distribution. It is recommended that only administrative users are granted access to these log files, preferably the same OS users that would run the batch.

The ReIM application does not restrict concurrent sessions from the same user. It means that multiple users can log in to ReIM server with the same credentials. There will be more than one session from application standpoint, but there will be the same user from auditing standpoint of view. It is recommended not to use the same credentials for different sessions.

The session is maintained per browser instance. So if more than a single browser is used then the server will consider such scenario as multiple user logins. At the same time multiple tabs of the same browser would share the session.

Session timeout is defined at the application server level. It is 60 minutes by default, but can be changed through WebLogic configuration.

# **Extending/Customization**

Customization and extending capabilities is an important part of any application. This chapter discusses how to securely implement customizations and extensions such that they do not jeopardize application security.

If customization is required it should be done in such a way that no built-in explicit security features would be circumvented. For example, many VO queries in ReIM use RMS data security views. These queries should not be modified to expose data by removing the usage of the view. It is recommended to perform secure code analysis after code customization to identify potential secure coding standard violations.

If additional integration credentials are required, the customization should store them in the Secure Credential Store along with all other ReIM credentials. Credential population should be done by the script provided with the application.

# **Securing the Database**

The database should be secured using the recommendations from the Oracle Database 12 C Release 1 Security Guide.

The following sections provide additional application specific guidance for securing the database for use with Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application.

## **Application Schema Owners**

As ReIM shares the schema owner with RMS, you need to follow the RMS security guidelines regarding schema owner permissions.

ReIM should not use schema owner for database communication. Instead a schema synonym should be used. The schema used for database interaction is stored in more than one place within the application (actually it is store in 2 configuration files and on the WebLogic Data Source). When you need to update the schema being used, make sure that all places have been updated.

#### **Database Security Considerations**

The following recommendations should be considered for the database:

- The database server should be on a private network.
- The database server should be in a locked secure facility and inaccessible to non-administrator personnel.
- The database should only be accessed through trusted network hosts.
- The database server should have minimal use of ports and any communications should be under secure protocols.
- The database should be on its own dedicated server (or a cluster of servers).
- The database server should be behind a firewall.
- Any database user should be audited.
- Only minimal rights should be granted to the owner of database processes and files such that only that owner has the right to read and write from the database related files, and no one else has the capability to read and write from such files.

## **Restricted Access to Purge Batches**

ReIM uses a batch infrastructure for purging data. The purging processes should be scheduled and executing any individual data purging process outside of this schedule should be avoided. Some of the purging is performed via truncating tables and as such no rollback is possible.

If some additional purging is required on a regular basis that is outside of the purging functionality provided by ReIM, it will need to be executed by a standard set of scripts that should have security built into it. In addition, any custom purging scripts should be executed under a separate schema.

# **Data Security**

The following sections provide application specific guidance for securing data for use with the Oracle Retail Invoice Matching application.

## **Location Security**

Quite often application users need to have access to a subset of locations within the Location Hierarchy. Retailers can assign a sub-tree of a location hierarchy to the application user group. Application users will have access only to the data (documents, discrepancies, etc.) associated with the locations that are assigned to the user's group. Data security is defined with the principle that the user just cannot act upon inaccessible data, but also cannot see that inaccessible data.

For example, if the application user User1 belongs to the group Group1 and the group has Store1, Store2, and Warehouse1 assigned to it, then the application user can see and act upon the documents related to those locations only. Document1 for Store1 can be found. Document2 for Store3 cannot even be found. Store3 also will not be listed anywhere in the location lists, LOVs, etc. when viewed by user User1. Another application user User2 that has access to the Store3 will be able to access and act on that document.

To assign the set of locations to the application user group, retailers would need to use standard Merchandising System mechanisms for data security.

Assignment of stores can be done at:

- Chain
- Area
- Region
- District
- **Organizational Unit**

To define store level security, the FILTER\_GROUP\_ORG table needs to be populated with a record associating the user's security group ID (from SEC\_USER\_GROUP) with the FILTER\_ORG\_LEVEL representing the location hierarchy level and FILTER\_ORG\_ ID representing ID at that level. For example, to allow the user from the secure group 1 access to the stores in the district 123, a record would be created in FILTER\_GROUP\_ ORG with '1', 'D', '123'.

Assignment of warehouses can be done at:

- Warehouse
- **Organizational Unit**

To define warehouse level security, FILTER\_GROUP\_ORG table needs to be populated with a record associating the user's security group ID (from SEC\_USER\_GROUP) with the FILTER\_ORG\_LEVEL representing the location hierarchy level and FILTER\_ORG\_ ID representing ID at that level. For example, to allow the user from the secure group 1 access to the warehouse 123, a record would be created in FILTER\_GROUP\_ORG with '1', 'W', '123'.

## **Reason Code Security**

Reason code data security is provided via the Reason Code Maintenance screen by assigning a security group id to the reason code. This assignment is stored in the IM\_ SEC\_GRP\_REASON\_CODE table.

# Part V

# Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM)

The following chapters provide guidance for administrators, developers, and system integrators who securely administer, customize, and integrate the Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM) application.

Part V contains the following chapters:

- General Security Considerations
- Understanding Security
- Post Installation Application Administration
- Extending/Customization
- Securing the Database

## **General Security Considerations**

This chapter discusses how to securely install the Oracle Retail Price Management (RPM) application. To obtain a secure configuration, follow the instructions and advice provided below.

The RPM application is installed on the server; however it is used in the distributed environment. Both client and server security must be taken into consideration when hardening application deployment. You need to reference your desktop and server operation system security guides, if available for more information on reinforcing security for the execution environment.

In particular, only valid users should have access to the client workstations running clients for the application. Since the RPM user interface has no inactivity timeouts, a reasonable locking policy should be established to lock out computer screens after some time of inactivity. Security policy should be established at the desktop level to monitor unsuccessful login attempts. System administrator should guarantee that the operation system has the latest mandatory update patches.

As RPM client executes in the Java sandbox, it is important to keep Java runtime up-to-date with the latest security patches. Java runtime can be provided by either a browser plug-in or by standalone JVM such as the one shipped with JDK. You need to make sure that runtime configuration for appropriate Java version is correct. See Figure 20–1 for example on how Java runtime environment settings window looks like.

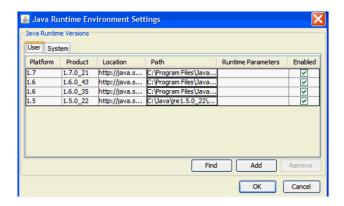


Figure 20–1 Java Runtime Environment Settings Window

Ensure the following:

- The product identifier matches actual version of the runtime pointed by path
- Disable runtimes that are not up-to-date are not required

- The configuration is correct at both system and user level (for each user on the workstation)
- The network configuration is correct and connection will go either directly or through authorized proxy
- Verify that the runtime configuration has enough temporary space allocation to download and keep RPM client (see RPM distribution for the latest client size)
- The correct certificates are installed on client's workstations. As RPM installation requires signing of distributed ears and jar files and self-generated keys are not allowed anymore, make sure that retailer certificate is used for signing and that the certificate is installed correctly
- Double-check that Java runtime is configured to allow JNLP file invocation the best setting would be to prompt user

System administrator should restrict users from modifying security setting for Java runtime. At the same time the user should be allowed to accept JNLP security requests. Only signed trusted code should be downloaded and run. The system should check that the certificate matches hostname of the server. The retailer should be registered as a trusted publisher with the workstation. SSL should be enabled on the client.

For more information of how secure the internal network used to access RPM server(s), see Network Security Configuration Guide. This should include both physical and logical security of the network. Only SSL enabled communication should be used.

Only the desktops on the intranet should be allowed accessing the application server. The best approach is to limit the set of client computers on the network that can access the application server. That can be done at the network level to prevent guest users on the local network from even seeing the application server.

Only system administrators should have access to the application server(s). Business users (even power users) should not have accounts on the application server computers. If such accounts do exist, the OS account privileges should prevent business user from accessing application server files/directories associated with RPM application.

The users running batches should not be system administrators. The best approach is to have a single dedicated user for running batches, rather than having multiple users running batches ad hoc. At the same time RPM application does not prevent any valid application user from running batches. The main difference between batch user and regular users is that batch user credentials exist in the Secure Wallet. Installer is the one responsible for placing batch user credentials into the wallet, so by default there will be only a single batch user. At the same time nothing is preventing the system admin from adding additional valid RPM users into Secure Wallet (by running provided scripts).

RPM both consumes and produces data files. File consumption is done on the client side where a user can select a file on the file system containing a Price Event Item List. Only CSV and Excel file types are allowed. It is recommended that the file transfer to the client workstation is done through secure FTP (in case the file is not generated on the same workstation). File generation is done on the server. It is recommended to keep the file being uploaded for audit purposes. It is up to the retailer to provide the process for that. The files can be kept in an audit directory or using any other appropriate document management system that would allow easy retrieval later on. Generated price event files are transmitted through secure FTP.

# **Understanding Security**

This chapter provides an overview of all the security features available in the RPM application. It is provided as a reference for how the application securely communicates with other applications; how the application authenticates, authorizes, and audits users; and the encryption and hashing mechanisms used by the application.

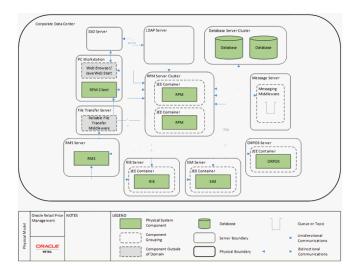
The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Security Features Overview
- **Dependent Applications**
- Discussion of Dependencies on Underlying Platform
- Technical Overview of the Security Features
- Security Features of the Application
- **Encryption and Hashing**

## **Security Features Overview**

Figure 21–1 shows the physical deployment of RPM.

Figure 21–1 RPM Physical Deployment



The Application server is deployed on the corporate intranet on WebLogic cluster. The Application server is connected to a cluster of Oracle databases and a corporate LDAP

server. Optionally Single Sign-On infrastructure can be deployed. In addition secure FTP server is responsible for transferring files in/out of the application on the server and on the client (if required). Optionally 3rd party batch running infrastructure can be deployed to run batch scripts (for example, Appworx, and so on). The client workstation should be at the corporate data center. The client workstations need to run supported Java runtime.

WebLogic Application server executes server side of the application logic. Oracle Database provides data handling functionality. An LDAP server provides user attributes handling. Single Sign-On infrastructure provides capability to share authentication tokens across multiple retail applications. An FTP server provides delivery for incoming/outgoing files. Workstation Java runtime executes client side application logic.

RPM is exchanging data with other retail applications that are part of the Oracle Retail Suite, such as RMS, SIM, and POS.

Each component of the deployment should be secured to provide minimum required access. This includes OS security, network security, browser security, LDAP security, WebLogic security, database Security and FTP server security. For information on how to secure each component, see the reference documentation.

## **Dependent Applications**

Security Guides for dependent applications are found at the following Web sites:

- Oracle Database 12 C Release 1: http://docs.oracle.com/database/121/TDPSG/E17609-19.pdf
- Oracle WebLogic 12.2.1: https://docs.oracle.com/middleware/1221/wls/wls-secure.htm

Contact your vendor for other components of security guides.

#### Discussion of Dependencies on Underlying Platform

RPM relies on Java runtime on the client workstations to provide client side code execution.

RPM replies on WebLogic to provide authorization for accessing application services. Only authenticated authorized users should be allowed to access Enterprise JavaBeans (EJBs) and data sources installed as part of RPM installation on WebLogic servers. For more information, see the Authorization section.

## **Technical Overview of the Security Features**

The following section describes the authentication, authorization, audit, and user management.

## **Security Features of the Application**

The relevant security features fall into one or more of the following categories. For information on these categories, see the following sections:

- Authentication
- Authorization
- Audit

#### User Management

#### Authentication

Only authentication users should have access to RPM application. By the point of application authentication the user potentially successfully authenticates with the network and/or the workstation OS.

RPM supports the following two types of authentication:

- Dedicated
- Single Sign-On

**Dedicated authentication** - User credentials (username and password) are verified by WebLogic Authenticator. For information on registering an Authenticator with WebLogic, see the Oracle Retail Price Management Installation Guide. LDAP authenticator should be used where actual authentication data is provided by LDAP.

**Note:** Even though LDAP provides the data, the actual verification of provided credentials is done by WebLogic.

If the WebLogic has been successfully verified the user credentials then the user has passed the first step of authentication. For the authentication to complete successfully the user should also have all the mandatory attributes defined within LDAP entity. If some mandatory attributes are missing then the authentication process will fail.

All LDAP attribute mappings are defined in the security properties file. The following attributes (besides user identifier attribute) have to be defined for a user to be able to successfully authenticate with RPM:

- ldap.firstname.attrname
- ldap.lastname.attrname

The attributes listed are not actual attribute name, but rather logical name and should be mapped to actual attribute name within security properties configuration file.

Dedicated authentication credentials are either provided by the application online user in real time (entering the user name and password on the RPM provided login page) or are retrieved by the application server from the Secure Wallet in the case of batch process. The batch user still needs to provide credentials alias, so that appropriate username and passwords are retrieved from the Secure Wallet.

Single Sign-On authentication - In case of Single Sign-On authentication happens only once per application suite. Authentication is performed by Single Sign-On infrastructure (potentially backed by the same LDAP server as the case for dedicated authentication). In this case login page is provided by the Single Sign-On infrastructure. The second step of authentication is exactly the same as in dedicated authentication - mandatory user attributes should be present in LDAP server.

In both cases of authentication, the authentication is performed when it is determined that the session is not authenticated or the session has been invalidated (in case of dedicated authentication).

#### **Authorization**

RPM supports the following two types of authorization:

Enterprise

#### **Business**

**Enterprise authorization** - This is performed by application server logic. WebLogic will make sure (if configured correctly - see the Oracle Retail Price Management Installation Guide for more information on required WebLogic configuration) that already authenticated user is the member of RPM user role/group (Role is created LDAP). Only the users who are members of RPM groups are allowed to get access to RPM functionality. All EJBs and data sources are accessible to RPM Secure User.

When the user submits a request to the server, the request (after authentication) is handled by a Controller EJB. This controller EJB will determine appropriate EJB to perform the action. When controller EJB will issue another request to Worker EJB, this request will be performed under RPM Secure User principal. Same discussion applies to accessing Data sources.

Business authorization - This is performed by Oracle Retail Security Management (RSM) logic. RSM is a part of RPM distribution. RMS will define what action each user role can perform and in what mode those action can be performed (allowed modes are Edit, View, None, Emergency). In addition to action security RSM provides ability to define data security. Data security allows system to associate appropriate level of location and merchandising hierarchy with a user role. Note that RSM operates on the user role level and not on the user level.

#### Audit

RPM does not provide extensive audit capabilities. Only price event tables carry the user information. The user information is relevant only as the creation identifier and does not guarantee that the final price event was completed by the same user who created the price event. Hence if auditing is required, it should be done at the database level. For information on how to turn on the database auditing, see the Oracle database documentation. The database auditing will be not be able to differentiate application users modifying data, as it is done at the database user level and all RPM application users share the same database user.

#### User Management

RPM does not store or maintain users. Instead RPM relies on LDAP to provide user management functionality on its behalf.

To create a new user to be used within RPM application, a new user should be created in LDAP; the user should be assigned to LDAP RPM role. Through backend the newly created user should be associated with a user role. If a new user role is required, it should be created through RSM screen first. It is recommended to create user roles with the minimum set of user privileges required for the user.

In order to remove the user from RPM, you need to first remove the user from the user group within RSM, then remove the user from a group in LDAP, and finally delete the user from LDAP.

## **Encryption and Hashing**

This section covers securing the applications using encryption and hashing.

RPM uses encryptions as part of a security key generated on the server to deliver a client to the user workstation. To access RMS the user issues a requests to the server for Java Network Launch Protocol (JNLP) file. The server will generate temporary token based on the encryption method configured in the security properties file.

user.signature.cipher.algorithm

By default HmacSHA1 is used, but the algorithm can be changed if required.

| Technical Overview of the Security Features |
|---|
|---|

# **Post Installation - Application Administration**

This chapter provides information about application administrative tasks related to security. How to manage users and roles as well as some other common application administrative tasks such as secure credential management and logging are discussed.

This chapter discusses post installing the application administration.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- **Roles and Permission Grants**
- Other Common Application Administration

#### **Roles and Permission Grants**

RPM uses the following two kinds of user roles:

- Enterprise
- **Business**

There should be only a single enterprise user role created and it is defaulted to rpm\_ secure\_users. This role is created in LDAP by the system administrator. Any LDAP user that should be considered for RPM processing should be made a member of this role. RPM makes an assumption that LDAP implementation will have groups that keep track of its member and the users will not be aware about their group membership. It implies that there will be a reference maintained by the user group to the user group member by means of a static member DN attribute. For example if this attribute is **uniqueMember**, then **uniqueMember** attribute will point to the group member. The user, on the other hand does not have any attributes pointing to the rpm\_ secure\_users group. RPM does not provide any LDIF scripts to create the rpm\_secure\_ users role.

If the data seeding script has been run, then the script would create a single business user role - Administrator Role. If the script has not been run, then no user roles exist by default and the retailer is responsible for creating the groups manually by inserting data into appropriate table (demo data script can be used as a starting point). The role Administrator Role, as the name suggests, has the highest level of privileges. The name of the group is completely arbitrary. Retailers can create as many additional roles as they require. The best approach when creating a user role is to define it based on the set of task the role members are supposed to perform and assign only the minimum required set of privileges to that group. For example, an employee can be part of a group which only allows the submission of price events and does not allow direct approval. This allows users with approval privileges the chance to review submitted price events and decide whether or not to approve them.

Despite it being the only role created by the data seed script, try to avoid assigning all users to Administrator Role. This will grant all users more privileges than is likely required. Create user roles that best fit the user's requirements and assign them only the privileges they require.

It is recommended to create the Administrator Role and an Admin user through a script and then to use Application logic (RSM Role Administration Screen) to maintain user roles.

The application logic allows the following actions:

- 1. Create/delete/update a user group
- Assign/remove users to/from a role
- Define a role's workflow permissions
- Assign Location Hierarchy to the role
- Assign Merchandise Hierarchy to the role

You cannot delete a user role from the UI, however it is possible to remove all the privileges from the role effectively eliminating it.

## Other Common Application Administration

As a part of the operational workflow, RPM needs to have credential information to authenticate application users or to authenticate application itself with other dependent components such as database, LDAP or Oracle Retail Integration Bus (RIB). For the case of remote users connecting to RPM servers through RMI credentials are retrieved in real time through client provided form. For all other cases the credentials are determined at installation and are stored in Secure Wallet by means of Credential Store Manager Component. At runtime the credentials are retrieved from the wallet and supplied to the component for authentication. The credentials can be updated if required. As part of installation RPM provides convenience scripts that allow credential entries to be updated. The scripts allow the system administrator to see usernames stored in RPM wallet partition and to change the password if necessary. The script does not display original passwords. For more information, see the *Operations Guide.* 

There are two set of logs that are generated by RPM application - infrastructure logs and actual Application logs. Infrastructure logs are configured and maintained by appropriate tools for infrastructure component. An example of infrastructure log would be WebLogic application server various logs. The logging level and other logging parameters can be adjusted through WebLogic component. Such logs are owned by the OS user that own WebLogic process. WebLogic log files are located within WebLogic directory structure. Application logs are generated by RPM application logic. RPM log configuration is done through RPM log configuration file (on the client and on the server). The administrator has the rights to configure the location of the RPM log files. RPM log files are also owned by the OS user that own WebLogic process (on the server) and OS user running client Java runtime (on the client workstation). It is recommended to grant access to log files only to the administrators.

RPM application does not restrict concurrent sessions from the same user. It means that more than a single user can log in to RPM server with the same credentials. There will be more than one session from application standpoint, but there will be the same user from database standpoint of view. It is recommended not to use the same credentials for different sessions.

Session timeout is defined at the application server level. It is 60 minutes by default, but can be changed through WebLogic configuration.

# **Extending/Customization**

Customization and extending capabilities is an important part of any application. This chapter discusses how to securely implement customizations and extensions such that they do not jeopardize application security.

If customization is required it should be done in such a way that no built-in explicit security features would be circumvented. Customization should be done using provided customization toolkit.

It is recommended to perform secure code analysis after code customization to identify potential secure coding standard violations.

If additional integration is required and credentials are required then the customization should store those additional credentials in the Secure Wallet along with all other RPM credentials (in RPM partition). Credential population should be done by a script provided with RPM. If additional EJB are required, they should be protected by the same authorization as pre-existing EJBs. For more information, see the Oracle Retail Price Management Installation Guide.

# **Securing the Database**

The database should be secured using the recommendations from the Oracle Database 12 C Release 1 Security Guide.

The following sections provide additional application specific guidance for securing the database for use with Oracle Retail Price Management application.

## **Application Schema Owners**

As RPM shares schema owner with RMS, follow RMS security guidelines regarding schema owner permissions.

RPM should not use schema owner for database communication. Instead a schema synonym should be used.

## **Database Security Considerations**

The following recommendations should be considered for the database:

- The database server should be in a private network.
- The database server should be in a locked secure facility and inaccessible to non-administrator personnel.
- The database should only be accessed through trusted network hosts.
- The database server should have minimal use of ports and any communications should be under secure protocols.
- The database should be on its own dedicated server.
- The database server should be behind a firewall.
- Any database user beyond the schema application owner should be audited.
- Only minimal rights should be granted to the owner of database processes and files such that only that owner has the right to read and write from the database related files, and no one else has the capability to read and write from such files.

The purge script is usually put into an automation script, which runs once a day. As described above, this script is usually run by a user with limited access (only execute procedure and connect access).

## **Restricted Access to Purge Batches**

RPM will use batch infrastructure for purging data. As such the user authentication is required. The purging processes should be scheduled and executing any individual data purging process outside of this schedule should be avoided.

If some additional purging is required on a regular basis that is outside of the purging functionality provided by RPM, do that through standard set of scripts that should have security built into it. Run the custom purging scripts under a separate schema.

# **Part VI**

# **Oracle Retail Allocation**

This Security Guide is for users and administrators of Oracle Retail Allocation. This includes merchandisers, buyers, business analysts, and administrative personnel.

Part VI contains the following chapter:

Allocation Security Considerations

For more information on Allocation Security Considerations, see Chapter 8, "Functional Security for Applications Using Fusion Middleware".

# **Allocation Security Considerations**

The chapter provides guidance for administrators to understand, configure, and customize functional security for the Oracle Retail Allocation application.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Technical Overview of the Security Features
- Security Configuration
- JMS Security
- Security in Allocation Reports Launching RMS Screens

## **Technical Overview of the Security Features**

The section describes the authentication, authorization, audit, and user management.

#### Security Features of the Application

The relevant security features fall into one or more of the following categories. For information on these categories, see the following sections:

- Authentication
- Authorization
- Audit
- User Management

#### Authentication

Only authenticated users should have access to Allocation. By the point of application authentication the user potentially successfully authenticates with the network and/or the workstation OS.

Allocation supports the following two types of authentication:

- Dedicated
- Single Sign-On

Dedicated Authentication: User credentials (username and password) are submitted by the Application Server to the LDAP server or any other configured authentication provider. If the authentication provider can successfully identify the user, then that user is considered authenticated with the Allocation application. Dedicated authentication credentials are either provided by the online application user in real time (entering user name and password on the Allocation provided login page) or are retrieved by the client from the Secure Wallet in the case of batch process. The batch user still needs to provide credentials alias, so that the appropriate username and passwords is retrieved from the Secure Wallet.

Single Sign-On authentication: In case of Single Sign-On, authentication happens only once per application suite. Authentication is performed by Single Sign -On infrastructure (potentially backed by the same LDAP server as the case for dedicated authentication). In this case login page is provided by the Single Sign - On infrastructure.

In both cases of authentication, the authentication is performed when it is determined that the session is not authenticated or the session has been invalidated (in case of dedicated authentication).

#### Authorization

Only application users that belong to one of the Allocation user roles are authorized to use functionality provided by Allocation. If the user is a valid enterprise user, login may be successful but authorization may prevent access to specific workflows based on the user's assigned role. Authorization is performed for each user driven operation. It is assumed that the batch user is assigned to the administrator role which is authorized to perform all operations.

#### Audit

Auditing can be performed at the application level and at the infrastructure level. The operating system (OS) can be configured to audit user access and processes invoked. The network layer can be configured to audit entire communication data set. The application server can be configured to audit access to the application, including all URLs requested. The database can be configured to audit each table separately or entire sessions. Allocation also has some limited auditing capabilities.

The application will maintain some level of audit trail by keeping track of the last user modifying data and the date and time it was done.

- LAST\_UPDATED\_BY
- LAST\_UPDATE\_DATE
- CREATED\_BY
- CREATED DATE

Additional audit can be performed by decreasing logging level of the application. In this case additional information is reported into logs. The drawback is that performance can suffer and that amount of log entries to be recorded will increase. You can selectively decrease logging (see Log4J and Java Logging documentation on logging configuration for more information). Also make sure that the log files generated by the application are secure and are accessible to authorized OS users only.

#### **User Management**

Allocation does not store or maintains users. Instead, Allocation relies on external systems such as LDAP to provide user management functionality on its behalf.

To create a new user to be used within Allocation, you need to create a new user in the LDAP or whatever data store the configured authentication provider relies on. To access Allocation workflows, the user should be assigned to a valid Allocation user role.

## **Security Configuration**

Access control of system resources is achieved by requiring users to authenticate at login and by restricting users to only those resources for which they are authorized. A default security configuration is available for immediate use after the Oracle Retail Fusion application is installed and is configured to use the Oracle Fusion Middleware security model. The default configuration includes three predefined security roles for application specific permission grants. Users can be added to predefined groups that are mapped to preconfigured application roles. Allocation is preconfigured to grant specific application permissions.

Table 25-1 Privileges

| Name  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Search Allocations Priv                               | A privilege for searching for allocations.                             |
| Maintain Allocation Priv                              | A privilege for creating, maintaining, and editing an allocation.      |
| Delete Allocation Priv                                | A privilege for deleting an allocation.                                |
| View Allocation Priv                                  | A privilege for viewing an allocation.                                 |
| Submit Allocation Priv                                | A privilege for submitting an allocation for approval.                 |
| Review Allocation Priv                                | A privilege for approving or reserving an allocation.                  |
| Batch Allocation Priv                                 | A privilege for running batch jobs.                                    |
| Search Allocation Location Groups Priv                | A privilege for searching for allocations.                             |
| Maintain Allocation Location Group Priv               | A privilege for creating and editing and an allocation location group. |
| Delete Allocation Location Group Priv                 | A privilege for deleting an allocation location group.                 |
| View Allocation Location Group Priv                   | A privilege for viewing an allocation location group.                  |
| Search Allocation Policy Templates Priv               | A privilege for searching for allocations.                             |
| Maintain Allocation Policy Template Priv              | A privilege for creating and editing a Policy<br>Template.             |
| Delete Allocation Policy Template Priv                | A privilege for deleting a Policy Template.                            |
| View Allocation Policy Template Priv                  | A privilege for viewing a Policy Template.                             |
| Search Size Profile Priv                              | A privilege for searching Size Profiles.                               |
| Maintain Size Profile Priv                            | A privilege for creating and editing and a Size Profile.               |
| Delete Size Profile Priv                              | A privilege for deleting a Size Profile.                               |
| View Size Profile Priv                                | A privilege for viewing a Size Profile.                                |
| Maintain System Options System<br>Properties Priv     | A privilege for editing the System Properties for System Options.      |
| Maintain System Options User Group<br>Properties Priv | A privilege for editing the user group properties for System Options.  |
| View System Options Priv                              | A privilege for viewing System Options.                                |
| Search Auto Quantity Limits Priv                      | A privilege for searching for Auto Quantity<br>Limits                  |

Table 25–1 (Cont.) Privileges

| Name  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Maintain Auto Quantity Limits Priv          | A privilege for editing for Auto Quantity Limits.     |
| View Auto Quantity Limits Priv              | A privilege for Viewing for Auto Quantity Limits.     |
| Maintain Allocation Dashboard Priv          | A privilege for maintaining the Allocation Dashboard. |
| Maintain Allocation Buyer Dashboard<br>Priv | Aprivilege for maintaining the Allocation Dashboard.  |

Table 25–2 Duties

| Duty   | Description   | List of Privileges   |
|--|---|--|
| Allocation<br>Management Duty                    | A duty for managing allocations.<br>This duty is an extension of the<br>Allocation Inquiry Duty.  | All privileges found in the<br>Allocation Inquiry Duty. Maintain<br>Allocation Priv, Delete Allocation<br>Priv,              |
| Allocation Inquiry<br>Duty                       | A duty for viewing allocations.   | View Allocation Priv, Search<br>Allocations Priv,  |
| Allocation Submit<br>Duty                        | A duty for submitting allocation for approval.  | Submit Allocation Priv,  |
| Allocation Review<br>Duty                        | A duty for approving or rejecting an allocation.  | Review Allocation Priv,  |
| Allocation Batch Duty                            | A duty for running batch process.   | Batch Allocation Priv,   |
| Allocation Location<br>Groups Management<br>Duty | A duty for managing allocation location groups. This duty is an extension of the Allocation Location Groups Inquiry Duty and Allocation Location Group Search Duty. | All privileges found in the<br>Allocation Location Groups<br>Inquiry Duty and the Allocation<br>Location Groups Search Duty. |
|  |   | Maintain Allocation Location<br>Groups Priv, Delete Allocation<br>Location Groups Priv,                                      |
| Allocation Location<br>Groups Inquiry Duty       | A duty for viewing allocation location groups.  | View Allocation Location Groups<br>Priv, Search Allocation Location<br>Groups Priv,  |
| Allocation Policy<br>Template<br>Management Duty | A duty for managing allocation<br>policy template. This duty is an<br>extension of the Allocation<br>Policy Template Inquiry Duty                                   | All privileges found in the<br>Allocation Policy Template<br>Inquiry Duty and the Allocation<br>Policy Template Search Priv, |
|  | and Allocation Policy Template<br>Search Duty.  | Maintain Allocation Policy<br>Template Priv, Delete Allocation<br>Policy Template Priv,                                      |
| Delete Allocation<br>Location Group Priv         | A duty for viewing allocation Policy Template.  | View Allocation Policy Template<br>Priv, Search Allocation Policy<br>Template Priv,  |
| Size Profile<br>Management Duty                  | A duty for managing size profile. This duty is an   | All privileges found in the Size<br>Profile Inquiry Duty.  |
|  | extension of the Size Profile Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain Size Profile Priv, Delete<br>Size Profile Priv,   |
| Size Profile Inquiry<br>Duty                     | A duty for viewing allocation Policy Template.  | View Size Profile Priv, Search Size<br>Profiles Priv,  |

Table 25–2 (Cont.) Duties

| Duty                                    | Description  | List of Privileges  |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| System Options<br>System Properties     | A duty for managing the system properties in system options.         | All privileges found in the System Options Inquiry Duty.          |  |
| Management Duty                         | This duty is an extension of the System Options Inquiry Duty.        | Maintain System Options System Properties Priv,                   |  |
| System Options User<br>Group Properties | A duty for managing user group properties system options. This       | All privileges found in the System Options Inquiry Duty.          |  |
| Management Duty                         | duty is an extension of the<br>System Options Inquiry Duty.          | Maintain System Options User<br>Group Properties Priv,            |  |
| System Options<br>Inquiry Duty          | A duty for inquiring on profile.<br>This duty is an extension of the | All privileges found in the System Options Inquiry Duty.          |  |
|   | Size Profile Inquiry Duty.   | Maintain System Options Priv,                                     |  |
| Auto Quantity Limits Duty               | A duty for managing Auto<br>Quantity Limits. This duty is an         | All privileges found in the Auto<br>Quantity Limits Inquiry Duty. |  |
|   | extension of the Auto Quantity<br>Limits Duty.                       | Maintain Auto Quantity Limits Priv.                               |  |
| Auto Quantity Limits                    | A duty for viewing Auto  | View Auto Quantity Limits Priv.                                   |  |
| Inquiry Duty                            | Quantity Limits.   | Search Auto Quantity Limits Priv.                                 |  |
| Allocation Dashboard<br>Duty            | A duty for maintaining the Allocation Dashboard.                     | Maintain Allocation Dashboard<br>Priv.                            |  |
| Allocation Buyer<br>Dashboard Duty      | A duty for maintaining the Allocation Buyer Dashboard.               | Maintain Allocation Buyer<br>Dashboard Priv.                      |  |

Table 25–3 Function Security Mapping

| Role          | Duty   | Privileges  |
|---------------|--|---|
| Administrator | Allocation Management Duty, Allocation Submit Duty, Allocation Review Duty, Allocation Location Groups Management Duty, Allocation Policy Template Management Duty, Size Profile Management Duty, System Options System Properties Management Duty, System Options User Group Properties Management Duty, Allocation Batch Duty, Auto Quantity Limits Management Duty, Allocation Dashboard Duty | Search Allocations Priv, Maintain Allocation Priv, Delete Allocation Priv, Submit Allocation Priv, Review Allocation Priv, View Allocation Priv, Search Allocation Priv, View Allocation Location Groups Priv, Search Allocation Location Groups Priv, View Allocation Policy Template Priv, Search Allocation Policy Templates Priv, View Size Profile Priv, Search Size Profile Priv, View System Options Priv, Maintain System Options User Group Properties Priv, Batch Allocation Priv, Maintain Auto Quantity Limits Priv, View Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Search Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Maintain Allocation Dashboard Priv |

Table 25–3 (Cont.) Function Security Mapping

| Role               | Duty  | Privileges   |
|--------------------|---|--|
| Allocation Manager | Allocation Management Duty, Allocation Submit Duty, Allocation Review Duty, Allocation Location Groups Management Duty, Allocation Policy Template Management Duty, Size Profile Management Duty, System Options User Group Properties Management Duty, Auto Quantity Limits Management Duty, Allocation Dashboard Duty | Search Allocations Priv, Maintain Allocation Priv, Delete Allocation Priv, Submit Allocation Priv, Review Allocation Priv, View Allocation Priv, View Allocation Priv, View Allocation Location Groups Priv, Search Allocation Location Groups Priv, View Allocation Folicy Template Priv, Search Allocation Policy Templates Priv, View Size Profile Priv, Search Size Profile Priv, View System Options Priv, Maintain System Options User Group Properties Priv, Maintain Auto Quantity Limits Priv, View Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Search Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Maintain Allocation Dashboard Priv |
| Allocator          | Allocation Management Duty, Allocation Submit Duty, Allocation Review Duty, Allocation Location Groups Inquiry Duty, Allocation Policy Template Inquiry Duty, Size Profile Management Duty, System Options Inquiry Duty Auto Quantity Limits Management Duty, Allocation Dashboard Duty.                                | Search Allocations Priv, Maintain Allocation Priv, Delete Allocation Priv, Submit Allocation Priv, Review Allocation Priv, Search Allocation Priv, Search Allocation Priv, View Allocation Location Groups Priv, Search Allocation Location Groups Priv, View Allocation Policy Template Priv, Search Allocation Policy Templates Priv, View Size Profile Priv, Search Size Profile Priv, View System Options Priv, Maintain Auto Quantity Limits Priv, View Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Search Auto Quantity Limits Priv, Maintain Allocation Dashboard Priv   |
| Buyer              | Allocation Inquiry Duty, Allocation<br>Policy Template Inquiry Duty,<br>Allocation Location Groups Inquiry<br>Duty, Allocation Size Profile Inquiry<br>Duty, Allocation Buyer Dashboard<br>Duty.  | View Allocation Priv, Search<br>Allocation Priv, View<br>Allocation Location Groups<br>Priv, View Allocation Policy<br>Template Priv, Search Size<br>Profile Priv, View Size Profile<br>Priv, Maintain Allocation<br>Buyer<br>Dashboard Priv   |

For more information about the Oracle Fusion Middleware security model and the authenticated role, see Oracle Fusion Middleware Application Security Guide.

#### JMS Security

Allocation utilizes a JMS Queue for long running processes. This queue can and should be secured. To do this, see Chapter 3, Asynchronous Task JMS Queue Security section.

**Note:** When step 9 is reached in Securing the Asynchronous Task JMS Queue, you need to name the JMS Queue Role as AllocJMSQueueAccessRole for security to work.

#### Security in Allocation Reports Launching RMS Screens

Some Oracle Retail Allocation Reports include in-context launch of RMS screens functionality to display specific orders or shipments information. This feature allows users to gain access to data which may be restricted by RMS permissions. It is therefore necessary that users with access to this property also have the proper role in RMS to access these screens.

The Allocation reports that contain the attribute that allows direct launch into RMS screens are:

- PO Arrival Report
- Shipment Arrival Report